

1 INTERNET-DRAFT
2 draft-ietf-ipp-model-~~v11-00~~11.txt

3 R. deBry
4 IBM Corporation
5 T. Hastings (editor)
6 Xerox Corporation
7 R. Herriot
8 ~~Xerox Corporation~~Sun Microsystems
9 S. Isaacson
10 Novell, Inc.
11 P. Powell
12 Astart Technologies
13 ~~November 16~~February 17, 1998

14
15 Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Model and Semantics
16 Copyright (C) The Internet Society (~~1999~~date). All Rights Reserved.

17 Status of this Memo

18 This document is an Internet-Draft and is in full conformance with all provisions of Section 10 of
19 [RFC2026]. Internet-Drafts are working documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), its
20 areas, and its working groups. Note that other groups may also distribute working documents as
21 Internet-Drafts.

22 Internet-Drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and may be updated, replaced, or
23 obsoleted by other documents at any time. It is inappropriate to use Internet-Drafts as reference material
24 or to cite them other than as "work in progress".

25 The list of current Internet-Drafts can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/ietf/1id-abstracts.txt>

26 The list of Internet-Draft Shadow Directories can be accessed as <http://www.ietf.org/shadow.html>.

27 ~~To learn the current status of any Internet Draft, please check the "1id-abstracts.txt" listing contained in~~
28 ~~the Internet Drafts Shadow Directories on <ftp.is.co.za> (Africa), <nic.nordu.net> (Europe), <munnari.oz.au>~~
29 ~~(Pacific Rim), <ftp.ietf.org> (US East Coast), or <ftp.isi.edu> (US West Coast).~~

30 Abstract

31 This document is one of a set of documents, which together describe all aspects of a new Internet
32 Printing Protocol (IPP). IPP is an application level protocol that can be used for distributed printing
33 using Internet tools and technologies. This document describes a simplified model consisting of abstract
34 objects, their attributes, and their operations that is independent of encoding and transport. The model
35 consists of a Printer and a Job object. A Job optionally supports multiple documents. IPP 1.10
36 semantics allow end-users and operators to query printer capabilities, submit print jobs, inquire about the
37 status of print jobs and printers, ~~and~~ cancel, hold, release, and restart print jobs. IPP 1.1 semantics allow

38 operators to pause, resume, and purge (jobs from) Printer objects. This document also addresses
39 security, internationalization, and directory issues.

40 The full set of IPP documents includes:

- 41 Design Goals for an Internet Printing Protocol [IPP-REQ]
- 42 Rationale for the Structure and Model and Protocol for the Internet Printing Protocol [IPP-RAT]
- 43 Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Model and Semantics (this document)
- 44 Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Encoding and Transport [IPP-PRO]
- 45 Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Implementer's Guide [IPP-IIG]
- 46 Mapping between LPD and IPP Protocols [IPP LPD]

47

48 The "Design Goals for an Internet Printing Protocol" document takes a broad look at distributed printing
49 functionality, and it enumerates real-life scenarios that help to clarify the features that need to be
50 included in a printing protocol for the Internet. It identifies requirements for three types of users: end
51 users, operators, and administrators. It calls out a subset of end user requirements that are satisfied in
52 IPP/1.0. Operator and administrator requirements are out of scope for version 1.0. A few OPTIONAL
53 operator operations have been added to IPP/1.1.

54 The "Rationale for the Structure and Model and Protocol for the Internet Printing Protocol" document
55 describes IPP from a high level view, defines a roadmap for the various documents that form the suite of
56 IPP specifications, and gives background and rationale for the IETF working group's major decisions.

57 The "Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Encoding and Transport" document is a formal mapping of the
58 abstract operations and attributes defined in the model document onto HTTP/1.1. It defines the encoding
59 rules for a new Internet MIME media type called "application/ipp". This document also defines the rules
60 for transporting over HTTP a message body whose Content-Type is "application/ipp". This document
61 defines a new scheme named 'ipp' for identifying IPP printers and jobs. Finally, this document defines
62 rules for supporting IPP/1.0 clients.

63 The "Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Implementer's Guide" document gives insight and advice to
64 implementers of IPP clients and IPP objects. It is intended to help them understand IPP/1.10 and some
65 of the considerations that may assist them in the design of their client and/or IPP object implementations.
66 For example, a typical order of processing requests is given, including error checking. Motivation for
67 some of the specification decisions is also included.

68 The "Mapping between LPD and IPP Protocols" document gives some advice to implementers of
69 gateways between IPP and LPD (Line Printer Daemon) implementations.

70

Table of Contents

71	1. Introduction	10
72	1.1 Simplified Printing Model	11
73	2. IPP Objects	13
74	2.1 Printer Object	13
75	2.2 Job Object	15
76	2.3 Object Relationships	16
77	2.4 Object Identity	17
78	3. IPP Operations	19
79	3.1 Common Semantics	20
80	3.1.1 Required Parameters	20
81	3.1.2 Operation IDs and Request IDs	20
82	3.1.3 Attributes	21
83	3.1.4 Character Set and Natural Language Operation Attributes	22
84	3.1.4.1 Request Operation Attributes	23
85	3.1.4.2 Response Operation Attributes	25
86	3.1.5 Operation Targets	26
87	3.1.6 Operation Status Codes and Messages	28
88	3.1.7 Versions	28
89	3.1.8 Job Creation Operations	30
90	3.2 Printer Operations	31
91	3.2.1 Print-Job Operation	31
92	3.2.1.1 Print-Job Request	31
93	3.2.1.2 Print-Job Response	35
94	3.2.2 Print-URI Operation	37
95	3.2.3 Validate-Job Operation	38
96	3.2.4 Create-Job Operation	38
97	3.2.5 Get-Printer-Attributes Operation	39
98	3.2.5.1 Get-Printer-Attributes Request	39
99	3.2.5.2 Get-Printer-Attributes Response	41
100	3.2.6 Get-Jobs Operation	42
101	3.2.6.1 Get-Jobs Request	42
102	3.2.6.2 Get-Jobs Response	43
103	<u>3.2.7 Pause-Printer Operation</u>	<u>44</u>
104	<u>3.2.7.1 Pause-Printer Request</u>	<u>45</u>
105	<u>3.2.7.2 Pause-Printer Response</u>	<u>46</u>
106	<u>3.2.8 Resume-Printer Operation</u>	<u>46</u>
107	<u>3.2.9 Purge-Jobs Operation</u>	<u>47</u>
108	3.3 Job Operations	48
109	3.3.1 Send-Document Operation	48
110	3.3.1.1 Send-Document Request	49
111	3.3.1.2 Send-Document Response	50

112	3.3.2	Send-URI Operation	51
113	3.3.3	Cancel-Job Operation	51
114	3.3.3.1	Cancel-Job Request	51
115	3.3.3.2	Cancel-Job Response	52
116	3.3.4	Get-Job-Attributes Operation	53
117	3.3.4.1	Get-Job-Attributes Request	53
118	3.3.4.2	Get-Job-Attributes Response	54
119	<u>3.3.5</u>	<u>Hold-Job Operation</u>	<u>55</u>
120	<u>3.3.5.1</u>	<u>Hold-Job Request</u>	<u>55</u>
121	<u>3.3.5.2</u>	<u>Hold-Job Response</u>	<u>56</u>
122	<u>3.3.6</u>	<u>Release-Job Operation</u>	<u>56</u>
123	<u>3.3.7</u>	<u>Restart-Job Operation</u>	<u>57</u>
124	<u>3.3.7.1</u>	<u>Restart-Job Request</u>	<u>58</u>
125	<u>3.3.7.2</u>	<u>Restart-Job Response</u>	<u>59</u>
126	4.	Object Attributes	59
127	4.1	Attribute Syntaxes	60
128	4.1.1	'text' 60	
129	4.1.1.1	'textWithoutLanguage'	61
130	4.1.1.2	'textWithLanguage'	61
131	4.1.2	'name' 62	
132	4.1.2.1	'nameWithoutLanguage'	62
133	4.1.2.2	'nameWithLanguage'	63
134	4.1.2.3	Matching 'name' attribute values	63
135	4.1.3	'keyword'	63
136	4.1.4	'enum' 64	
137	4.1.5	'uri' 65	
138	4.1.6	'uriScheme'	65
139	4.1.7	'charset'	65
140	4.1.8	'naturalLanguage'	66
141	4.1.9	'mimeType'	66
142	4.1.10	'octetString'	67
143	4.1.11	'boolean'	68
144	4.1.12	'integer'	68
145	4.1.13	'rangeOfInteger'	68
146	4.1.14	'dateTime'	68
147	4.1.15	'resolution'	68
148	4.1.16	'1setOf X'	68
149	4.2	Job Template Attributes	69
150	4.2.1	job-priority (integer(1:100))	72
151	4.2.2	job-hold-until (type3 keyword name (MAX))	73
152	4.2.3	job-sheets (type3 keyword name(MAX))	73
153	4.2.4	multiple-document-handling (type2 keyword)	74
154	4.2.5	copies (integer(1:MAX))	75
155	4.2.6	finishings (1setOf type2 enum)	75

156	4.2.7	page-ranges (1setOf rangeOfInteger (1:MAX))	77
157	4.2.8	sides (type2 keyword).....	78
158	4.2.9	number-up (integer(1:MAX)).....	78
159	4.2.10	orientation-requested (type2 enum).....	79
160	4.2.11	media (type3 keyword name(MAX)).....	80
161	4.2.12	printer-resolution (resolution)	80
162	4.2.13	print-quality (type2 enum).....	80
163	4.3	Job Description Attributes	81
164	4.3.1	job-uri (uri)	83
165	4.3.2	job-id (integer(1:MAX)).....	83
166	4.3.3	job-printer-uri (uri)	83
167	4.3.4	job-more-info (uri).....	83
168	4.3.5	job-name (name(MAX)).....	84
169	4.3.6	job-originating-user-name (name(MAX)).....	84
170	4.3.7	job-state (type1 enum).....	84
171	<u>4.3.7.1</u>	<u>Partitioning of Job States</u>	<u>87</u>
172	4.3.8	job-state-reasons (1setOf type2 keyword)	87
173	4.3.9	job-state-message (text(MAX)).....	89
174	4.3.10	number-of-documents (integer(0:MAX)).....	90
175	4.3.11	output-device-assigned (name(127))	90
176	4.3.12	time-at-creation (integer(0:MAX)).....	90
177	4.3.13	time-at-processing (integer(0:MAX)).....	90
178	4.3.14	time-at-completed (integer(0:MAX))	90
179	4.3.15	number-of-intervening-jobs (integer(0:MAX))	90
180	4.3.16	job-message-from-operator (text(127))	90
181	4.3.17	job-k-octets (integer(0:MAX))	91
182	4.3.18	job-impressions (integer(0:MAX)).....	91
183	4.3.19	job-media-sheets (integer(0:MAX))	92
184	4.3.20	job-k-octets-processed (integer(0:MAX))	92
185	4.3.21	job-impressions-completed (integer(0:MAX)).....	92
186	4.3.22	job-media-sheets-completed (integer(0:MAX))	92
187	4.3.23	attributes-charset (charset).....	93
188	4.3.24	attributes-natural-language (naturalLanguage).....	93
189	4.4	Printer Description Attributes.....	93
190	4.4.1	printer-uri-supported (1setOf uri).....	95
191	4.4.2	uri-security-supported (1setOf type2 keyword).....	95
192	4.4.3	printer-name (name(127)).....	96
193	4.4.4	printer-location (text(127)).....	97
194	4.4.5	printer-info (text(127))	97
195	4.4.6	printer-more-info (uri).....	97
196	4.4.7	printer-driver-installer (uri)	97
197	4.4.8	printer-make-and-model (text(127)).....	97
198	4.4.9	printer-more-info-manufacturer (uri)	97
199	4.4.10	printer-state (type1 enum)	98
200	4.4.11	printer-state-reasons (1setOf type2 keyword).....	99

201	4.4.12	printer-state-message (text(MAX))	101
202	4.4.13	operations-supported (1setOf type2 enum)	101
203	4.4.14	charset-configured (charset)	102
204	4.4.15	charset-supported (1setOf charset)	102
205	4.4.16	natural-language-configured (naturalLanguage)	102
206	4.4.17	generated-natural-language-supported (1setOf naturalLanguage).....	102
207	4.4.18	document-format-default (mimeMediaType).....	103
208	4.4.19	document-format-supported (1setOf mimeMediaType).....	103
209	4.4.20	printer-is-accepting-jobs (boolean).....	103
210	4.4.21	queued-job-count (integer(0:MAX))	103
211	4.4.22	printer-message-from-operator (text(127)).....	103
212	4.4.23	color-supported (boolean)	104
213	4.4.24	reference-uri-schemes-supported (1setOf uriScheme)	104
214	4.4.25	pdl-override-supported (type2 keyword).....	104
215	4.4.26	printer-up-time (integer(1:MAX)).....	104
216	4.4.27	printer-current-time (dateTime).....	105
217	4.4.28	multiple-operation-time-out (integer(1:MAX)).....	105
218	4.4.29	compression-supported (1setOf type3 keyword).....	105
219	4.4.30	job-k-octets-supported (rangeOfInteger(0:MAX))	105
220	4.4.31	job-impressions-supported (rangeOfInteger(0:MAX)).....	106
221	4.4.32	job-media-sheets-supported (rangeOfInteger(0:MAX)).....	106
222	<u>4.4.33</u>	<u>pages-per-minute (integer(0:MAX))</u>	<u>106</u>
223	<u>4.4.34</u>	<u>pages-per-minute-color (integer(0:MAX)).....</u>	<u>106</u>
224	5.	Conformance	107
225	5.1	Client Conformance Requirements.....	107
226	5.2	IPP Object Conformance Requirements	107
227	5.2.1	Objects.....	108
228	5.2.2	Operations.....	108
229	5.2.3	IPP Object Attributes.....	108
230	<u>5.2.4</u>	<u>Versions.....</u>	<u>107</u>
231	5.2.5	Extensions	109
232	5.2.6	Attribute Syntaxes	109
233	5.3	Charset and Natural Language Requirements.....	109
234	5.4	Security Conformance Requirements	110
235	6.	IANA Considerations (registered and private extensions).....	110
236	6.1	Typed 'keyword' and 'enum' Extensions	110
237	6.2	Attribute Extensibility	112
238	6.3	Attribute Syntax Extensibility	113
239	6.4	Operation Extensibility.....	113
240	6.5	Attribute Groups	113
241	6.6	Status Code Extensibility.....	114
242	6.7	Registration of MIME types/sub-types for document-formats	114
243	6.8	Registration of charsets for use in 'charset' attribute values	114

244	7. Internationalization Considerations.....	115
245	8. Security Considerations.....	117
246	8.1 Security Scenarios.....	118
247	8.1.1 Client and Server in the Same Security Domain.....	118
248	8.1.2 Client and Server in Different Security Domains.....	119
249	8.1.3 Print by Reference.....	119
250	8.2 URIs for TLSSSL3 and non- TLSSSL3 Access.....	119
251	8.3 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) Operation Attribute.....	119
252	8.4 Restricted Queries.....	121
253	8.5 Operations performed by operators and system administrators	121
254	8.6 Queries on jobs submitted using non-IPP protocols.....	121
255	8.7 IPP Security Application Profile for TLSSSL3	122
256	9. References.....	122
257	10. Notices.....	126
258	11. Author's Address.....	127
259	12. Formats for IPP Registration Proposals.....	130
260	12.1 Type2 keyword attribute values registration.....	130
261	12.2 Type3 keyword attribute values registration.....	130
262	12.3 Type2 enum attribute values registration.....	130
263	12.4 Type3 enum attribute values registration.....	131
264	12.5 Attribute registration.....	131
265	12.6 Attribute Syntax registration.....	132
266	12.7 Operation registration.....	132
267	12.8 Attribute Group registration.....	132
268	12.9 Status code registration.....	133
269	13. APPENDIX A: Terminology.....	133
270	13.1 Conformance Terminology.....	133
271	13.1.1 NEED NOT.....	133
272	13.2 Model Terminology.....	133
273	13.2.1 Keyword.....	133
274	13.2.2 Attributes.....	133
275	13.2.2.1 Attribute Name.....	134
276	13.2.2.2 Attribute Group Name.....	134
277	13.2.2.3 Attribute Value.....	134
278	13.2.2.4 Attribute Syntax.....	134
279	13.2.3 Supports.....	134
280	13.2.4 print-stream page.....	136
281	13.2.5 impression.....	136
282	14. APPENDIX B: Status Codes and Suggested Status Code Messages.....	136

283	14.1	Status Codes	137
284	14.1.1	Informational	137
285	14.1.2	Successful Status Codes	137
286	14.1.2.1	successful-ok (0x0000).....	137
287	14.1.2.2	successful-ok-ignored-or-substituted-attributes (0x0001).....	138
288	14.1.2.3	successful-ok-conflicting-attributes (0x0002).....	138
289	14.1.3	Redirection Status Codes.....	138
290	14.1.4	Client Error Status Codes	138
291	14.1.4.1	client-error-bad-request (0x0400).....	138
292	14.1.4.2	client-error-forbidden (0x0401).....	139
293	14.1.4.3	client-error-not-authenticated (0x0402).....	139
294	14.1.4.4	client-error-not-authorized (0x0403).....	139
295	14.1.4.5	client-error-not-possible (0x0404).....	139
296	14.1.4.6	client-error-timeout (0x0405).....	139
297	14.1.4.7	client-error-not-found (0x0406).....	139
298	14.1.4.8	client-error-gone (0x0407).....	140
299	14.1.4.9	client-error-request-entity-too-large (0x0408).....	140
300	14.1.4.10	client-error-request-value-too-long (0x0409).....	140
301	14.1.4.11	client-error-document-format-not-supported (0x040A).....	141
302	14.1.4.12	client-error-attributes-or-values-not-supported (0x040B).....	141
303	14.1.4.13	client-error-uri-scheme-not-supported (0x040C).....	141
304	14.1.4.14	client-error-charset-not-supported (0x040D).....	141
305	14.1.4.15	client-error-conflicting-attributes (0x040E).....	141
306	14.1.5	Server Error Status Codes	141
307	14.1.5.1	server-error-internal-error (0x0500).....	142
308	14.1.5.2	server-error-operation-not-supported (0x0501).....	142
309	14.1.5.3	server-error-service-unavailable (0x0502).....	142
310	14.1.5.4	server-error-version-not-supported (0x0503).....	142
311	14.1.5.5	server-error-device-error (0x0504).....	142
312	14.1.5.6	server-error-temporary-error (0x0505).....	143
313	14.1.5.7	server-error-not-accepting-jobs (0x0506).....	143
314	14.1.5.8	server-error-busy (0x0507).....	143
315	14.1.5.9	server-error-job-canceled (0x0508).....	143
316	14.2	Status Codes for IPP Operations.....	144
317	15.	APPENDIX C: "media" keyword values	145
318	16.	APPENDIX D: Processing IPP Attributes	149
319	16.1	Fidelity.....	150
320	16.2	Page Description Language (PDL) Override	151
321	16.3	Using Job Template Attributes During Document Processing.....	152
322	17.	APPENDIX E: Generic Directory Schema	153
323	18.	APPENDIX F: Differences between the IPP/1.0 and IPP/1.1 "Model and Semantics" Specifications	155
324			

325 ~~18.1 Changes to the IPP/1.0 January 21, 1999 version to make the IPP/1.1 January 24, 1999 version~~152
326 ~~18.2 Changes to the IPP/1.0 November 16, 1998 version to make the IPP/1.0 January 21, 1999~~
327 ~~version.....~~152
328 ~~18.3 Changes to the IPP/1.0 June 30, 1998 version to make the IPP/1.0 November 16, 1998 version~~
329 ~~——~~152
330

331 1. Introduction

332 The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) is an application level protocol that can be used for distributed
333 printing using Internet tools and technologies. IPP version 1.10 (IPP/1.10) focuses only on end user
334 functionality. This document is just one of a suite of documents that fully define IPP. The full set of
335 IPP documents includes:

- 336 Design Goals for an Internet Printing Protocol [IPP-REQ]
- 337 Rationale for the Structure and Model and Protocol for the Internet Printing Protocol [IPP-RAT]
- 338 Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Model and Semantics (this document)
- 339 Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Encoding and Transport [IPP-PRO]
- 340 Internet Printing Protocol/1.10: Implementer's Guide [IPP-IIG]
- 341 Mapping between LPD and IPP Protocols [IPP-LPD]

342

343 Anyone reading these documents for the first time is strongly encouraged to read the IPP documents in
344 the above order.

345 This document is laid out as follows:

- 346 - The rest of Section 1 is an introduction to the IPP simplified model for distributed printing.
- 347 - Section 2 introduces the object types covered in the model with their basic behaviors, attributes,
348 and interactions.
- 349 - Section 3 defines the operations included in IPP/4.01.1. IPP operations are synchronous, therefore,
350 for each operation, there is a both request and a response.
- 351 - Section 4 defines the attributes (and their syntaxes) that are used in the model.
- 352 - Sections 5 - 6 summarizes the implementation conformance requirements for objects that support
353 the protocol and IANA considerations, respectively.
- 354 - Sections 7 - 12 cover the Internationalization and Security considerations as well as References,
355 [Intellectual Property Notice](#), Copyright Notice, Author contact information, and Formats for
356 Registration Proposals.
- 357 - Sections 13 - 15 are appendices that cover Terminology, Status Codes and Messages, and "media"
358 keyword values.

359 Note: This document uses terms such as "attributes", "keywords", and "support". These
360 terms have special meaning and are defined in the model terminology section 13.2.
361 Capitalized terms, such as MUST, MUST NOT, REQUIRED, SHOULD, SHOULD
362 NOT, MAY, NEED NOT, and OPTIONAL, have special meaning relating to
363 conformance. These terms are defined in section 13.1 on conformance terminology, most
364 of which is taken from RFC 2119 [RFC2119].

- 365 - Section 16 is an appendix that helps to clarify the effects of interactions between related attributes
366 and their values.
- 367 - Section 17 is an appendix that enumerates the subset of Printer attributes that form a generic
368 directory schema. These attributes are useful when registering a Printer so that a client can find
369 the Printer not just by name, but by filtered searches as well.

370 - Section 18 is an appendix ~~that provides a Change History~~ summarizing the ~~clarification~~ additions
371 and changes from the IPP/1.0 "Model and Semantics" specification [IPP-MOD1.0] to make this
372 IPP/1.1 document ~~that might affect an implementation since the June 30, 1998 draft.~~

373 1.1 Simplified Printing Model

374 In order to achieve its goal of realizing a workable printing protocol for the Internet, the Internet Printing
375 Protocol (IPP) is based on a simplified printing model that abstracts the many components of real world
376 printing solutions. The Internet is a distributed computing environment where requesters of print
377 services (clients, applications, printer drivers, etc.) cooperate and interact with print service providers.
378 This model and semantics document describes a simple, abstract model for IPP even though the
379 underlying configurations may be complex "n-tier" client/server systems. An important simplifying step
380 in the IPP model is to expose only the key objects and interfaces required for printing. The model
381 described in this model document does not include features, interfaces, and relationships that are beyond
382 the scope of the first version of IPP (IPP/1.0). IPP/1.1 incorporates many of the relevant ideas and
383 lessons learned from other specification and development efforts [HTPP] [ISO10175] [LDPA]
384 [P1387.4] [PSIS] [RFC1179] [SWP]. IPP is heavily influenced by the printing model introduced in the
385 Document Printing Application (DPA) [ISO10175] standard. Although DPA specifies both end user and
386 administrative features, IPP version 1.1 (IPP/1.1) focuses only primarily on end user functionality
387 with a few additional OPTIONAL operator operations.

388 The IPP/1.1 model encapsulates the important components of distributed printing into two object
389 types:

- 390 - Printer (Section 2.1)
- 391 - Job (Section 2.2)

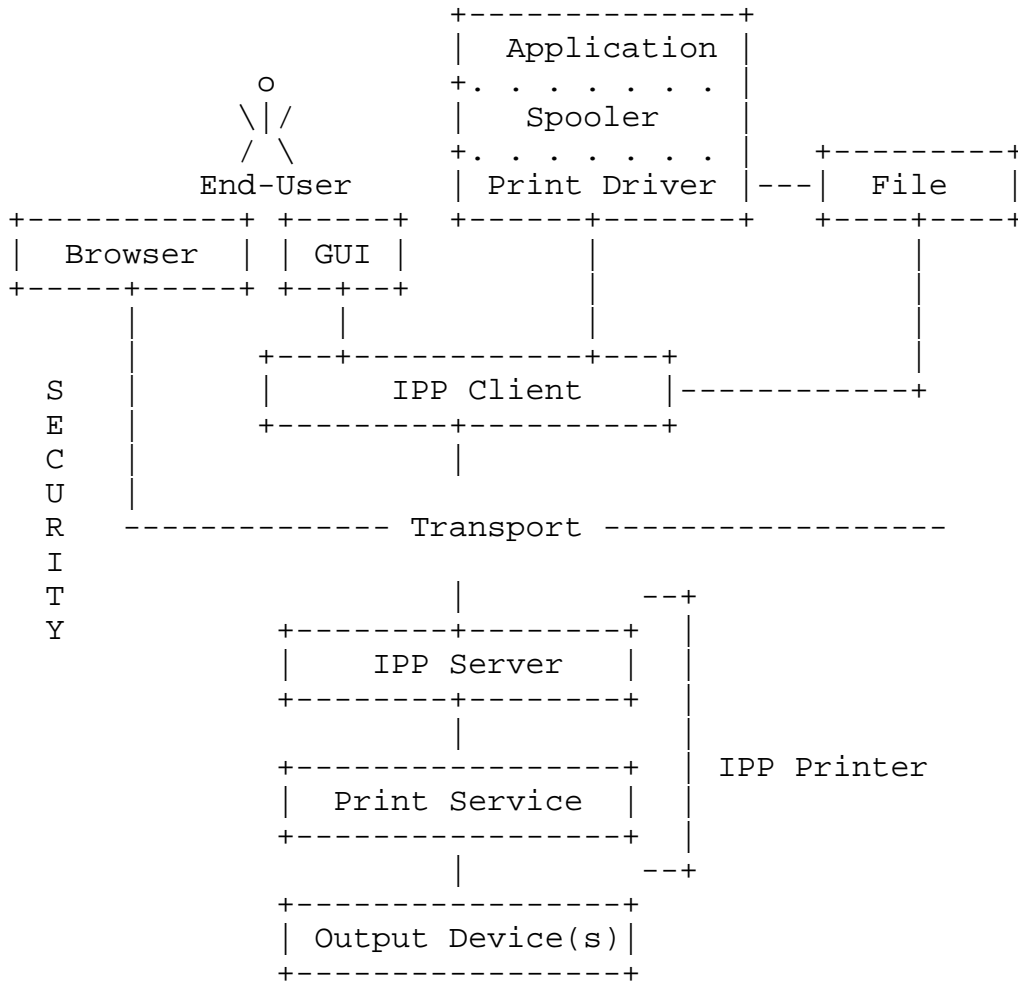
392

393 Each object type has an associated set of operations (see section 3) and attributes (see section 3.3.5).

394 It is important, however, to understand that in real system implementations (which lie underneath the
395 abstracted IPP/1.1 model), there are other components of a print service which are not explicitly
396 defined in the IPP/1.1 model. The following figure illustrates where IPP/1.1 fits with respect to
397 these other components.

398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428

N D S
O I E
T R C
I E U
F C R
I T I
C O T
A R Y
I
O
N



429 An IPP Printer object encapsulates the functions normally associated with physical output devices along
430 with the spooling, scheduling and multiple device management functions often associated with a print
431 server. Printer objects are optionally registered as entries in a directory where end users find and select
432 them based on some sort of filtered and context based searching mechanism (see section 17). The
433 directory is used to store relatively static information about the Printer, allowing end users to search for
434 and find Printers that match their search criteria, for example: name, context, printer capabilities, etc.
435 The more dynamic information, such as state, currently loaded and ready media, number of jobs at the
436 Printer, errors, warnings, and so forth, is directly associated with the Printer object itself rather than with
437 the entry in the directory which only represents the Printer object.

438 IPP clients implement the IPP protocol on the client side and give end users (or programs running on
439 behalf of end users) the ability to query Printer objects and submit and manage print jobs. An IPP server
440 is just that part of the Printer object that implements the server-side protocol. The rest of the Printer
441 object implements (or gateways into) the application semantics of the print service itself. The Printer
442 objects may be embedded in an output device or may be implemented on a host on the network that
443 communicates with an output device.

444 When a job is submitted to the Printer object and the Printer object validates the attributes in the
445 submission request, the Printer object creates a new Job object. The end user then interacts with this
446 new Job object to query its status and monitor the progress of the job. An end users may can also cancel
447 their print jobs by using the Job object's Cancel-Job operation. An end-user can also hold, release, and
448 restart their print jobs using the Job object's OPTIONAL Hold-Job, Release-Job, and Restart-Job
449 operations, if implemented.

450 A privileged operator or administrator of a Printer object can cancel, hold, release, and restart any user's
451 job using the REQUIRED Cancel-Job and the OPTIONAL Hold-Job, Release-Job, and Restart-Job
452 operations. In additional privileged operator or administrator of a Printer object can pause, resume, or
453 purge (jobs from) a Printer object using the OPTIONAL Pause-Printer, Resume-Printer, and Purge-Jobs
454 operations, if implemented.

455 The notification service is out of scope for this IPP/1.01.1 specification, but using such a notification
456 service, the end user is able to register for and receive Printer specific and Job specific events. An end
457 user can query the status of Printer objects and can follow the progress of Job objects by polling using
458 the Get-Printer-Attributes, Get-Jobs, and Get-Job-Attributes operations.

459 2. IPP Objects

460 The IPP/1.01.1 model introduces objects of type Printer and Job. Each type of object models relevant
461 aspects of a real-world entity such as a real printer or real print job. Each object type is defined as a set
462 of possible attributes that may be supported by instances of that object type. For each object (instance),
463 the actual set of supported attributes and values describe a specific implementation. The object's
464 attributes and values describe its state, capabilities, realizable features, job processing functions, and
465 default behaviors and characteristics. For example, the Printer object type is defined as a set of attributes
466 that each Printer object potentially supports. In the same manner, the Job object type is defined as a set
467 of attributes that are potentially supported by each Job object.

468 Each attribute included in the set of attributes defining an object type is labeled as:

- 469 - "REQUIRED": each object MUST support the attribute.
- 470 - "OPTIONAL": each object MAY support the attribute.

471

472 There is no such similar labeling of attribute values. However, if an implementation supports an
473 attribute, it MUST support at least one of the possible values for that attribute.

474 2.1 Printer Object

475 The major component of the IPP/1.01.1 model is the Printer object. A Printer object implements the
476 server-side of the IPP/1.01.1 protocol. Using the protocol, end users may query the attributes of the
477 Printer object and submit print jobs to the Printer object. The actual implementation components behind
478 the Printer abstraction may take on different forms and different configurations. However, the model

479 abstraction allows the details of the configuration of real components to remain opaque to the end user.
480 Section 3 describes each of the Printer operations in detail.

481 The capabilities and state of a Printer object are described by its attributes. Printer attributes are divided
482 into two groups:

- 483 - "job-template" attributes: These attributes describe supported job processing capabilities and
484 defaults for the Printer object. (See section 4.2)
 - 485 - "printer-description" attributes: These attributes describe the Printer object's identification, state,
486 location, references to other sources of information about the Printer object, etc. (see section 4.4)
- 487

488 Since a Printer object is an abstraction of a generic document output device and print service provider, a
489 Printer object could be used to represent any real or virtual device with semantics consistent with the
490 Printer object, such as a fax device, an imager, or even a CD writer.

491 Some examples of configurations supporting a Printer object include:

- 492 1) An output device with no spooling capabilities
 - 493 2) An output device with a built-in spooler
 - 494 3) A print server supporting IPP with one or more associated output devices
 - 495 3a) The associated output devices may or may not be capable of spooling jobs
 - 496 3b) The associated output devices may or may not support IPP
- 497

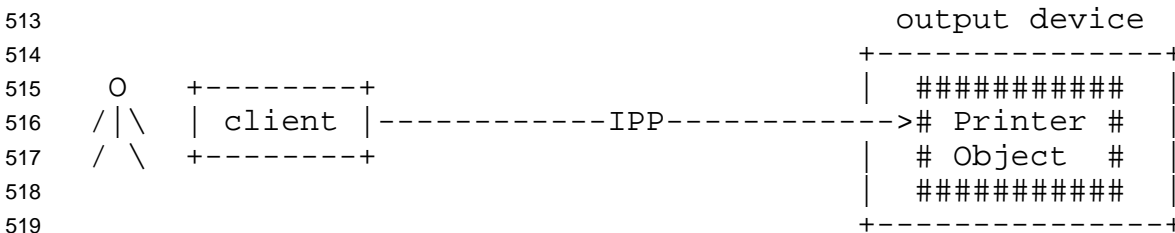
498 The following figures show some examples of how Printer objects can be realized on top of various
499 distributed printing configurations. The embedded case below represents configurations 1 and 2. The
500 hosted and fan-out figures below represent configurations 3a and 3b.

501 Legend:

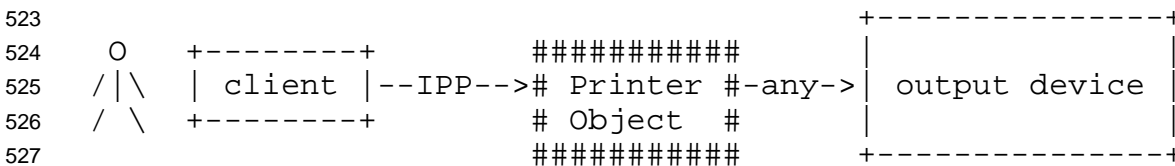
502
503 ##### indicates a Printer object which is
504 either embedded in an output device or is
505 hosted in a server. The Printer object
506 might or might not be capable of queuing/spooling.

507
508 any indicates any network protocol or direct
509 connect, including IPP

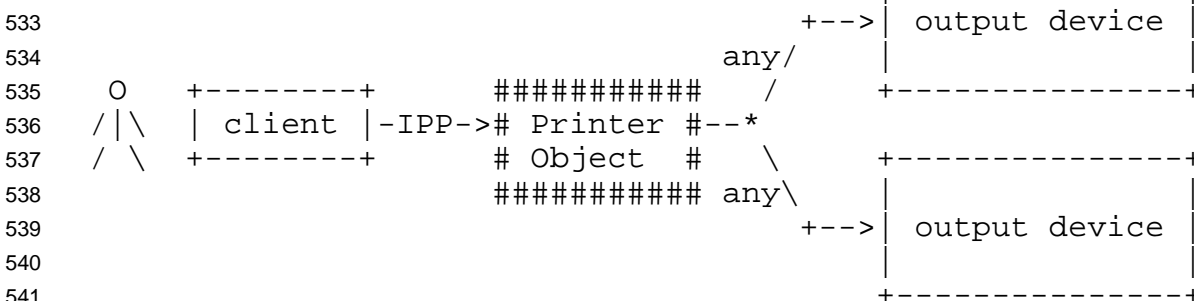
510
511
512 embedded printer:



522 hosted printer:



531
532 fan out:



544 2.2 Job Object

545 A Job object is used to model a print job. A Job object contains documents. The information required
546 to create a Job object is sent in a create request from the end user via an IPP Client to the Printer object.

547 The Printer object validates the create request, and if the Printer object accepts the request, the Printer
548 object creates the new Job object. Section 3 describes each of the Job operations in detail.

549 The characteristics and state of a Job object are described by its attributes. Job attributes are grouped
550 into two groups as follows:

- 551 - "job-template" attributes: These attributes can be supplied by the client or end user and include job
552 processing instructions which are intended to override any Printer object defaults and/or
553 instructions embedded within the document data. (See section 4.2)
- 554 - "job-description" attributes: These attributes describe the Job object's identification, state, size, etc.
555 The client supplies some of these attributes, and the Printer object generates others. (See section
556 4.3)

557
558 An implementation **MUST** support at least one document per Job object. An implementation **MAY**
559 support multiple documents per Job object. A document is either:

- 560 - a stream of document data in a format supported by the Printer object (typically a Page Description
561 Language - PDL), or
- 562 - a reference to such a stream of document data

563
564 In ~~IPP/1.0~~IPP/1.1, a document is not modeled as an IPP object, therefore it has no object identifier or
565 associated attributes. All job processing instructions are modeled as Job object attributes. These
566 attributes are called Job Template attributes and they apply equally to all documents within a Job object.

567 2.3 Object Relationships

568 IPP objects have relationships that are maintained persistently along with the persistent storage of the
569 object attributes.

570 A Printer object can represent either one or more physical output devices or a logical device which
571 "processes" jobs but never actually uses a physical output device to put marks on paper. Examples of
572 logical devices include a Web page publisher or a gateway into an online document archive or
573 repository. A Printer object contains zero or more Job objects.

574 A Job object is contained by exactly one Printer object, however the identical document data associated
575 with a Job object could be sent to either the same or a different Printer object. In this case, a second Job
576 object would be created which would be almost identical to the first Job object, however it would have
577 new (different) Job object identifiers (see section 2.4).

578 A Job object is either empty (before any documents have been added) or contains one or more
579 documents. If the contained document is a stream of document data, that stream can be contained in
580 only one document. However, there can be identical copies of the stream in other documents in the same
581 or different Job objects. If the contained document is just a reference to a stream of document data,
582 other documents (in the same or different Job object(s)) may contain the same reference.

583 2.4 Object Identity

584 All Printer and Job objects are identified by a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) [RFC2396] so that they
585 can be persistently and unambiguously referenced. The notion of a URI is a useful concept, however,
586 until the notion of URI is more stable (i.e., defined more completely and deployed more widely), it is
587 expected that the URIs used for IPP objects will actually be URLs [RFC2396]. Since every URL is a
588 specialized form of a URI, even though the more generic term URI is used throughout the rest of this
589 document, its usage is intended to cover the more specific notion of URL as well.

590 An administrator configures Printer objects to either support or not support authentication and/or
591 message privacy using ~~TLSSSL3~~ [TLSSSL] (the mechanism for security configuration is outside the
592 scope of [this IPP/4.01.1 document](#)). In some situations, both types of connections (both authenticated
593 and unauthenticated) can be established using a single communication channel that has some sort of
594 negotiation mechanism. In other situations, multiple communication channels are used, one for each
595 type of security configuration. Section 8 provides a full description of all security considerations and
596 configurations.

597 If a Printer object supports more than one communication channel, some or all of those channels might
598 support and/or require different security mechanisms. In such cases, an administrator could expose the
599 simultaneous support for these multiple communication channels as multiple URIs for a single Printer
600 object where each URI represents one of the communication channels to the Printer object. To support
601 this flexibility, the IPP Printer object type defines a multi-valued identification attribute called the
602 "printer-uri-supported" attribute. It MUST contain at least one URI. It MAY contain more than one
603 URI. That is, every Printer object will have at least one URI that identifies at least one communication
604 channel to the Printer object, but it may have more than one URI where each URI identifies a different
605 communication channel to the Printer object. The "printer-uri-supported" attribute has a companion
606 attribute, the "uri-security-supported" attribute, that has the same cardinality as "printer-uri-supported".
607 The purpose of the "uri-security-supported" attribute is to indicate the security mechanisms (if any) used
608 for each URI listed in "printer-uri-supported". These two attributes are fully described in sections 4.4.1
609 and 4.4.2.

610 When a job is submitted to the Printer object via a create request, the client supplies only a single Printer
611 object URI. The client supplied Printer object URI MUST be one of the values in the "printer-uri-
612 supported" Printer attribute.

613 Note: [IPP/4.01.1](#) does not specify how the client obtains the client supplied URI, but it is
614 RECOMMENDED that a Printer object be registered as an entry in a directory service. End-users and
615 programs can then interrogate the directory searching for Printers. Section 17 defines a generic schema
616 for Printer object entries in the directory service and describes how the entry acts as a bridge to the actual
617 IPP Printer object. The entry in the directory that represents the IPP Printer object includes the possibly
618 many URIs for that Printer object as values in one its attributes.

619 When a client submits a create request to the Printer object, the Printer object validates the request and
620 creates a new Job object. The Printer object assigns the new Job object a URI which is stored in the
621 "job-uri" Job attribute. This URI is then used by clients as the target for subsequent Job operations. The

622 Printer object generates a Job URI based on its configured security policy and the URI used by the client
623 in the create request.

624 For example, consider a Printer object that supports both a communication channel secured by the use of
625 SSL3 (using HTTP over SSL3 with an "https" schemed URI) and another open communication channel
626 that is not secured with SSL3 (using a simple "http" schemed URI). If a client were to submit a job
627 using the secure URI, the Printer object would assign the new Job object a secure URI as well. If a client
628 were to submit a job using the open-channel URI, the Printer would assign the new Job object an open-
629 channel URI.

630 In addition, the Printer object also populates the Job object's "job-printer-uri" attribute. This is a
631 reference back to the Printer object that created the Job object. If a client only has access to a Job
632 object's "job-uri" identifier, the client can query the Job's "job-printer-uri" attribute in order to determine
633 which Printer object created the Job object. If the Printer object supports more than one URI, the Printer
634 object picks the one URI supplied by the client when creating the job to build the value for and to
635 populate the Job's "job-printer-uri" attribute.

636 Allowing Job objects to have URIs allows for flexibility and scalability. For example, in some
637 implementations, the Printer object might create Jobs that are processed in the same local environment
638 as the Printer object itself. In this case, the Job URI might just be a composition of the Printer's URI and
639 some unique component for the Job object, such as the unique 32-bit positive integer mentioned later in
640 this paragraph. In other implementations, the Printer object might be a central clearing-house for
641 validating all Job object creation requests, but the Job object itself might be created in some environment
642 that is remote from the Printer object. In this case, the Job object's URI may have no physical-location
643 relationship at all to the Printer object's URI. Again, the fact that Job objects have URIs allows for
644 flexibility and scalability, however, many existing printing systems have local models or interface
645 constraints that force print jobs to be identified using only a 32-bit positive integer rather than an
646 independent URI. This numeric Job ID is only unique within the context of the Printer object to which
647 the create request was originally submitted. Therefore, in order to allow both types of client access to
648 IPP Job objects (either by Job URI or by numeric Job ID), when the Printer object successfully processes
649 a create request and creates a new Job object, the Printer object MUST generate both a Job URI and a
650 Job ID. The Job ID (stored in the "job-id" attribute) only has meaning in the context of the Printer object
651 to which the create request was originally submitted. This requirement to support both Job URIs and Job
652 IDs allows all types of clients to access Printer objects and Job objects no matter the local constraints
653 imposed on the client implementation.

654 In addition to identifiers, Printer objects and Job objects have names ("printer-name" and "job-name").
655 An object name NEED NOT be unique across all instances of all objects. A Printer object's name is
656 chosen and set by an administrator through some mechanism outside the scope of [this IPP/1.10.1](#)
657 [document](#). A Job object's name is optionally chosen and supplied by the IPP client submitting the job.
658 If the client does not supply a Job object name, the Printer object generates a name for the new Job
659 object. In all cases, the name only has local meaning.

660 To summarize:

- 661 - Each Printer object is identified with one or more URIs. The Printer's "printer-uri-supported"
662 attribute contains the URI(s).

- 663 - The Printer object's "uri-security-supported" attribute identifies the communication channel security
664 protocols that may or may not have been configured for the various Printer object URIs (e.g.,
665 ['ssl3tls'](#) or ['none'](#)).
- 666 - Each Job object is identified with a Job URI. The Job's "job-uri" attribute contains the URI.
- 667 - Each Job object is also identified with Job ID which is a 32-bit, positive integer. The Job's "job-id"
668 attribute contains the Job ID. The Job ID is only unique within the context of the Printer object
669 which created the Job object.
- 670 - Each Job object has a "job-printer-uri" attribute which contains the URI of the Printer object that
671 was used to create the Job object. This attribute is used to determine the Printer object that
672 created a Job object when given only the URI for the Job object. This linkage is necessary to
673 determine the languages, charsets, and operations which are supported on that Job (the basis for
674 such support comes from the creating Printer object).
- 675 - Each Printer object has a name (which is not necessarily unique). The administrator chooses and
676 sets this name through some mechanism outside the scope of [this IPP/4.01.1 document itself](#). The
677 Printer object's "printer-name" attribute contains the name.
- 678 - Each Job object has a name (which is not necessarily unique). The client optionally supplies this
679 name in the create request. If the client does not supply this name, the Printer object generates a
680 name for the Job object. The Job object's "job-name" attribute contains the name.

681 3. IPP Operations

682 IPP objects support operations. An operation consists of a request and a response. When a client
683 communicates with an IPP object, the client issues an operation request to the URI for that object.
684 Operation requests and responses have parameters that identify the operation. Operations also have
685 attributes that affect the run-time characteristics of the operation (the intended target, localization
686 information, etc.). These operation-specific attributes are called operation attributes (as compared to
687 object attributes such as Printer object attributes or Job object attributes). Each request carries along
688 with it any operation attributes, object attributes, and/or document data required to perform the
689 operation. Each request requires a response from the object. Each response indicates success or failure
690 of the operation with a status code as a response parameter. The response contains any operation
691 attributes, object attributes, and/or status messages generated during the execution of the operation
692 request.

693 This section describes the semantics of the IPP operations, both requests and responses, in terms of the
694 parameters, attributes, and other data associated with each operation.

695 The IPP/[4.01.1](#) Printer operations are:

- 696 Print-Job (section 3.2.1)
- 697 Print-URI (section 3.2.2)
- 698 Validate-Job (section 3.2.3)
- 699 Create-Job (section 3.2.4)
- 700 Get-Printer-Attributes (section 3.2.5)
- 701 Get-Jobs (section 3.2.6)
- 702 [Pause-Printer \(section 3.3.5\)](#)

703 [Resume-Printer \(section 3.3.6\)](#)

704 [Purge-Jobs \(section 3.3.7\)](#)

705

706 The Job operations are:

707 Send-Document (section 3.3.1)

708 Send-URI (section 3.3.2)

709 Cancel-Job (section 3.3.3)

710 Get-Job-Attributes (section 3.3.4)

711 [Hold-Job \(section 3.3.5\)](#)

712 [Release-Job \(section 3.3.6\)](#)

713 [Restart-Job \(section 3.3.7\)](#)

714

715 The Send-Document and Send-URI Job operations are used to add a new document to an existing multi-
716 document Job object created using the Create-Job operation.

717 3.1 Common Semantics

718 All IPP operations require some common parameters and operation attributes. These common elements
719 and their semantic characteristics are defined and described in more detail in the following sections.

720 3.1.1 Required Parameters

721 Every operation request contains the following REQUIRED parameters:

722 - a "version-number",

723 - an "operation-id",

724 - a "request-id", and

725 - the attributes that are REQUIRED for that type of request.

726

727 Every operation response contains the following REQUIRED parameters:

728 - a "version-number",

729 - a "status-code",

730 - the "request-id" that was supplied in the corresponding request, and

731 - the attributes that are REQUIRED for that type of response.

732

733 The "[E](#)ncoding and [T](#)ransport document [IPP-PRO] defines special rules for the encoding of these
734 parameters. All other operation elements are represented using the more generic encoding rules for
735 attributes and groups of attributes.

736 3.1.2 Operation IDs and Request IDs

737 Each IPP operation request includes an identifying "operation-id" value. Valid values are defined in the
738 "operations-supported" Printer attribute section (see section 4.4.13). The client specifies which
739 operation is being requested by supplying the correct "operation-id" value.

740 In addition, every invocation of an operation is identified by a "request-id" value. For each request, the
741 client chooses the "request-id" which MUST be an integer (possibly unique depending on client
742 requirements) in the range from 1 to $2^{31} - 1$ (inclusive). This "request-id" allows clients to manage
743 multiple outstanding requests. The receiving IPP object copies all 32-bits of the client-supplied "request-
744 id" attribute into the response so that the client can match the response with the correct outstanding
745 request, even if the "request-id" is out of range. If the request is terminated before the complete
746 "request-id" is received, the IPP object rejects the request and returns a response with a "request-id" of 0.

747 Note: In some cases, the transport protocol underneath IPP might be a connection oriented protocol that
748 would make it impossible for a client to receive responses in any order other than the order in which the
749 corresponding requests were sent. In such cases, the "request-id" attribute would not be essential for
750 correct protocol operation. However, in other mappings, the operation responses can come back in any
751 order. In these cases, the "request-id" would be essential.

752 3.1.3 Attributes

753 Operation requests and responses are both composed of groups of attributes and/or document data. The
754 attributes groups are:

- 755 - Operation Attributes: These attributes are passed in the operation and affect the IPP object's
756 behavior while processing the operation request and may affect other attributes or groups of
757 attributes. Some operation attributes describe the document data associated with the print job
758 and are associated with new Job objects, however most operation attributes do not persist beyond
759 the life of the operation. The description of each operation attribute includes conformance
760 statements indicating which operation attributes are REQUIRED and which are OPTIONAL for
761 an IPP object to support and which attributes a client MUST supply in a request and an IPP
762 object MUST supply in a response.
- 763 - Job Template Attributes: These attributes affect the processing of a job. A client OPTIONALLY
764 supplies Job Template Attributes in a create request, and the receiving object MUST be prepared
765 to receive all supported attributes. The Job object can later be queried to find out what Job
766 Template attributes were originally requested in the create request, and such attributes are
767 returned in the response as Job Object Attributes. The Printer object can be queried about its Job
768 Template attributes to find out what type of job processing capabilities are supported and/or what
769 the default job processing behaviors are, though such attributes are returned in the response as
770 Printer Object Attributes. The "ipp-attribute-fidelity" operation attribute affects processing of all
771 client-supplied Job Template attributes (see sections 3.2.1.2 and 16 for a full description of "ipp-
772 attribute-fidelity" and its relationship to other attributes).
- 773 - Job Object Attributes: These attributes are returned in response to a query operation directed at a
774 Job object.
- 775 - Printer Object Attributes: These attributes are returned in response to a query operation directed at a
776 Printer object.
- 777 - Unsupported Attributes: In a create request, the client supplies a set of Operation and Job Template
778 attributes. If any of these attributes or their values is unsupported by the Printer object, the
779 Printer object returns the set of unsupported attributes in the response. Sections 3.2.1.2 and 16
780 gives a full description of how Job Template attributes supplied by the client in a create request
781 are processed by the Printer object and how unsupported attributes are returned to the client.

782 Because of extensibility, any IPP object might receive a request that contains new or unknown
783 attributes or values for which it has no support. In such cases, the IPP object processes what it
784 can and returns the unsupported attributes in the response.
785

786 Later in this section, each operation is formally defined by identifying the allowed and expected groups
787 of attributes for each request and response. The model identifies a specific order for each group in each
788 request or response, but the attributes within each group may be in any order, unless specified otherwise.

789 Each attribute specification includes the attribute's name followed by the name of its attribute syntax(es)
790 in parentheses. In addition, each 'integer' attribute is followed by the allowed range in parentheses,
791 (m:n), for values of that attribute. Each 'text' or 'name' attribute is followed by the maximum size in
792 octets in parentheses, (size), for values of that attribute. For more details on attribute syntax notation, see
793 the descriptions of these attributes syntaxes in section 4.1.

794 Note: Document data included in the operation is not strictly an attribute, but it is treated as a special
795 attribute group for ordering purposes. The only operations that support supplying the document data
796 within an operation request are Print-Job and Send-Document. There are no operation responses that
797 include document data.

798 Note: Some operations are REQUIRED for IPP objects to support; the others are OPTIONAL (see
799 section 5.2.2). Therefore, before using an OPTIONAL operation, a client SHOULD first use the
800 REQUIRED Get-Printer-Attributes operation to query the Printer's "operations-supported" attribute in
801 order to determine which OPTIONAL Printer and Job operations are actually supported. The client
802 SHOULD NOT use an OPTIONAL operation that is not supported. When an IPP object receives a
803 request to perform an operation it does not support, it returns the 'server-error-operation-not-supported'
804 status code (see section 14.1.5.2). An IPP object is non-conformant if it does not support a REQUIRED
805 operation.

806 3.1.4 Character Set and Natural Language Operation Attributes

807 Some Job and Printer attributes have values that are text strings and names intended for human
808 understanding rather than machine understanding (see the 'text' and 'name' attribute syntax descriptions
809 in section 4.1). The following sections describe two special Operation Attributes called "attributes-
810 charset" and "attributes-natural-language". These attributes are always part of the Operation Attributes
811 group. For most attribute groups, the order of the attributes within the group is not important. However,
812 for these two attributes within the Operation Attributes group, the order is critical. The "attributes-
813 charset" attribute MUST be the first attribute in the group and the "attributes-natural-language" attribute
814 MUST be the second attribute in the group. In other words, these attributes MUST be supplied in every
815 IPP request and response, they MUST come first in the group, and MUST come in the specified order.
816 For job creation operations, the IPP Printer implementation saves these two attributes with the new Job
817 object as Job Description attributes. For the sake of brevity in this document, these operation attribute
818 descriptions are not repeated with every operation request and response, but have a reference back to this
819 section instead.

820 3.1.4.1 Request Operation Attributes

821 The client MUST supply and the Printer object MUST support the following REQUIRED operation
822 attributes in every IPP/1.1 operation request:

823 "attributes-charset" (charset):

824 This operation attribute identifies the charset (coded character set and encoding method) used by
825 any 'text' and 'name' attributes that the client is supplying in this request. It also identifies the
826 charset that the Printer object MUST use (if supported) for all 'text' and 'name' attributes and
827 status messages that the Printer object returns in the response to this request. See Sections 4.1.1
828 and 4.1.2 for the specification of the 'text' and 'name' attribute syntaxes.

829
830 All clients and IPP objects MUST support the 'utf-8' charset [RFC2044/2279] and MAY support
831 additional charsets provided that they are registered with IANA [IANA-CS]. If the Printer object
832 does not support the client supplied charset value, the Printer object MUST reject the request, set
833 the "attributes-charset" to 'utf-8' in the response, and return the 'client-error-charset-not-
834 supported' status code and any 'text' or 'name' attributes using the 'utf-8' charset. The Printer
835 object MUST indicate the charset(s) supported as the values of the "charset-supported" Printer
836 attribute (see Section 4.4.15), so that the client can query to determine which charset(s) are
837 supported.

838
839 Note to client implementers: Since IPP objects are only required to support the 'utf-8' charset, in
840 order to maximize interoperability with multiple IPP object implementations, a client may want
841 to supply 'utf-8' in the "attributes-charset" operation attribute, even though the client is only
842 passing and able to present a simpler charset, such as US-ASCII or ISO-8859-1. Then the client
843 will have to filter out (or charset convert) those characters that are returned in the response that it
844 cannot present to its user. On the other hand, if both the client and the IPP objects also support a
845 charset in common besides utf-8, the client may want to use that charset in order to avoid charset
846 conversion or data loss.

847
848 See the 'charset' attribute syntax description in Section 4.1.7 for the syntax and semantic
849 interpretation of the values of this attribute and for example values.

850
851 "attributes-natural-language" (naturalLanguage):

852 This operation attribute identifies the natural language used by any 'text' and 'name' attributes that
853 the client is supplying in this request. This attribute also identifies the natural language that the
854 Printer object SHOULD use for all 'text' and 'name' attributes and status messages that the Printer
855 object returns in the response to this request.

856
857 There are no REQUIRED natural languages required for the Printer object to support. However,
858 the Printer object's "generated-natural-language-supported" attribute identifies the natural
859 languages supported by the Printer object and any contained Job objects for all text strings
860 generated by the IPP object. A client MAY query this attribute to determine which natural
861 language(s) are supported for generated messages.

862

863 For any of the attributes for which the Printer object generates text, i.e., for the "job-state-
864 message", "printer-state-message", and status messages (see Section 3.1.6), the Printer object
865 MUST be able to generate these text strings in any of its supported natural languages. If the
866 client requests a natural language that is not supported, the Printer object MUST return these
867 generated messages in the Printer's configured natural language as specified by the Printer's
868 "natural-language-configured" attribute" (see Section 4.4.16).

869
870 For other 'text' and 'name' attributes supplied by the client, authentication system, operator,
871 system administrator, or manufacturer (i.e., for "job-originating-user-name", "printer-name"
872 (name), "printer-location" (text), "printer-info" (text), and "printer-make-and-model" (text)), the
873 Printer object is only required to support the configured natural language of the Printer identified
874 by the Printer object's "natural-language-configured" attribute, though support of additional
875 natural languages for these attributes is permitted.

876
877 For any 'text' or 'name' attribute in the request that is in a different natural language than the value
878 supplied in the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute, the client MUST use the Natural
879 Language Override mechanism (see sections 4.1.1.2 and 4.1.2.2) for each such attribute value
880 supplied. The client MAY use the Natural Language Override mechanism redundantly, i.e., use
881 it even when the value is in the same natural language as the value supplied in the "attributes-
882 natural-language" operation attribute of the request.

883
884 The IPP object MUST accept any natural language and any Natural Language Override, whether
885 the IPP object supports that natural language or not (and independent of the value of the "ipp-
886 attribute-fidelity" Operation attribute). That is the IPP object accepts all client supplied values no
887 matter what the values are in the Printer object's "generated-natural-language-supported"
888 attribute. That attribute, "generated-natural-language-supported", only applies to generated
889 messages, not client supplied messages. The IPP object MUST remember that natural language
890 for all client-supplied attributes, and when returning those attributes in response to a query, the
891 IPP object MUST indicate that natural language.

892
893 Each value whose attribute syntax type is 'text' or 'name' (see sections 4.1.1 and 4.1.2) has an
894 Associated Natural-Language. This document does not specify how this association is stored in a
895 Printer or Job object. When such a value is encoded in a request or response, the natural
896 language is either implicit or explicit:

- 897
898 • In the implicit case, the value contains only the text/name value, and the language is
899 specified by the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute in the request or
900 response (see sections 4.1.1.1 textWithoutLanguage and 4.1.2.1
901 nameWithoutLanguage).
- 902
903 • In the explicit case (also known as the Natural-Language Override case), the value
904 contains both the language and the text/name value (see sections 4.1.1.2
905 textWithLanguage and 4.1.2.2 nameWithLanguage).

906

907 For example, the "job-name" attribute MAY be supplied by the client in a create request. The
908 text value for this attribute will be in the natural language identified by the "attribute-natural-
909 language" attribute, or if different, as identified by the Natural Language Override mechanism. If
910 supplied, the IPP object will use the value of the "job-name" attribute to populate the Job object's
911 "job-name" attribute. Whenever any client queries the Job object's "job-name" attribute, the IPP
912 object returns the attribute as stored and uses the Natural Language Override mechanism to
913 specify the natural language, if it is different from that reported in the "attributes-natural-
914 language" operation attribute of the response. The IPP object MAY use the Natural Language
915 Override mechanism redundantly, i.e., use it even when the value is in the same natural language
916 as the value supplied in the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute of the response.

917
918 An IPP object MUST NOT reject a request based on a supplied natural language in an
919 "attributes-natural-language" Operation attribute or in any attribute that uses the Natural
920 Language Override.

921
922 See the 'naturalLanguage' attribute syntax description in section 4.1.8 for the syntax and semantic
923 interpretation of the values of this attribute and for example values.

924
925 Clients SHOULD NOT supply 'text' or 'name' attributes that use an illegal combination of natural
926 language and charset. For example, suppose a Printer object supports charsets 'utf-8', 'iso-8859-1', and
927 'iso-8859-7'. Suppose also, that it supports natural languages 'en' (English), 'fr' (French), and 'el' (Greek).
928 Although the Printer object supports the charset 'iso-8859-1' and natural language 'el', it probably does
929 not support the combination of Greek text strings using the 'iso-8859-1' charset. The Printer object
930 handles this apparent incompatibility differently depending on the context in which it occurs:

- 931 - In a create request: If the client supplies a text or name attribute (for example, the "job-name"
932 operation attribute) that uses an apparently incompatible combination, it is a client choice that
933 does not affect the Printer object or its correct operation. Therefore, the Printer object simply
934 accepts the client supplied value, stores it with the Job object, and responds back with the same
935 combination whenever the client (or any client) queries for that attribute.
- 936 -In a query-type operation, like Get-Printer-Attributes: If the client requests an apparently
937 incompatible combination, the Printer object responds (as described in section 3.1.4.2) using the
938 Printer's configured natural language rather than the natural language requested by the client.

939
940 In either case, the Printer object does not reject the request because of the apparent incompatibility. The
941 potential incompatible combination of charset and natural language can occur either at the global
942 operation level or at the Natural Language Override attribute-by-attribute level. In addition, since the
943 response always includes explicit charset and natural language information, there is never any question
944 or ambiguity in how the client interprets the response.

945 3.1.4.2 Response Operation Attributes

946 The Printer object MUST supply and the client MUST support the following REQUIRED operation
947 attributes in every IPP/4.01.1 operation response:

948 "attributes-charset" (charset):

949 This operation attribute identifies the charset used by any 'text' and 'name' attributes that the
950 Printer object is returning in this response. The value in this response **MUST** be the same value
951 as the "attributes-charset" operation attribute supplied by the client in the request. If this is not
952 possible (i.e., the charset requested is not supported), the request would have been rejected. See
953 "attributes-charset" described in Section 3.1.4.1 above.

954
955 If the Printer object supports more than just the 'utf-8' charset, the Printer object **MUST** be able to
956 code convert between each of the charsets supported on a highest fidelity possible basis in order
957 to return the 'text' and 'name' attributes in the charset requested by the client. However, some
958 information loss **MAY** occur during the charset conversion depending on the charsets involved.
959 For example, the Printer object may convert from a UTF-8 'a' to a US-ASCII 'a' (with no loss of
960 information), from an ISO Latin 1 CAPITAL LETTER A WITH ACUTE ACCENT to US-
961 ASCII 'A' (losing the accent), or from a UTF-8 Japanese Kanji character to some ISO Latin 1
962 error character indication such as '?', decimal code equivalent, or to the absence of a character,
963 depending on implementation.

964
965 Note: Whether an implementation that supports more than one charset stores the data in the
966 charset supplied by the client or code converts to one of the other supported charsets, depends on
967 implementation. The strategy should try to minimize loss of information during code conversion.
968 On each response, such an implementation converts from its internal charset to that requested.

969
970 "attributes-natural-language" (naturalLanguage):

971 This operation attribute identifies the natural language used by any 'text' and 'name' attributes that
972 the IPP object is returning in this response. Unlike the "attributes-charset" operation attribute,
973 the IPP object **NEED NOT** return the same value as that supplied by the client in the request.
974 The IPP object **MAY** return the natural language of the Job object or the Printer's configured
975 natural language as identified by the Printer object's "natural-language-configured" attribute,
976 rather than the natural language supplied by the client. For any 'text' or 'name' attribute or status
977 message in the response that is in a different natural language than the value returned in the
978 "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute, the IPP object **MUST** use the Natural Language
979 Override mechanism (see sections 4.1.1.2 and 4.1.2.2) on each attribute value returned. The IPP
980 object **MAY** use the Natural Language Override mechanism redundantly, i.e., use it even when
981 the value is in the same natural language as the value supplied in the "attributes-natural-
982 language" operation attribute of the response.

983 3.1.5 Operation Targets

984 All IPP operations are directed at IPP objects. For Printer operations, the operation is always directed at
985 a Printer object using one of its URIs (i.e., one of the values in the Printer object's "printer-uri-
986 supported" attribute). Even if the Printer object supports more than one URI, the client supplies only one
987 URI as the target of the operation. The client identifies the target object by supplying the correct URI in
988 the "printer-uri (uri)" operation attribute.

989 For Job operations, the operation is directed at either:

- 990 - The Job object itself using the Job object's URI. In this case, the client identifies the target object
991 by supplying the correct URI in the "job-uri (uri)" operation attribute.
992 - The Printer object that created the Job object using both the Printer objects URI and the Job object's
993 Job ID. Since the Printer object that created the Job object generated the Job ID, it MUST be
994 able to correctly associate the client supplied Job ID with the correct Job object. The client
995 supplies the Printer object's URI in the "printer-uri (uri)" operation attribute and the Job object's
996 Job ID in the "job-id (integer(1:MAX))" operation attribute.
997

998 If the operation is directed at the Job object directly using the Job object's URI, the client MUST NOT
999 include the redundant "job-id" operation attribute.

1000 The operation target attributes are REQUIRED operation attributes that MUST be included in every
1001 operation request. Like the charset and natural language attributes (see section 3.1.4), the operation
1002 target attributes are specially ordered operation attributes. In all cases, the operation target attributes
1003 immediately follow the "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes within the
1004 operation attribute group, however the specific ordering rules are:

- 1005 - In the case where there is only one operation target attribute (i.e., either only the "printer-uri"
1006 attribute or only the "job-uri" attribute), that attribute MUST be the third attribute in the
1007 operation attributes group.
1008 - In the case where Job operations use two operation target attributes (i.e., the "printer-uri" and "job-
1009 id" attributes), the "printer-uri" attribute MUST be the third attribute and the "job-id" attribute
1010 MUST be the fourth attribute.
1011

1012 In all cases, the target URIs contained within the body of IPP operation requests and responses must be
1013 in absolute format rather than relative format (a relative URL identifies a resource with the scope of the
1014 HTTP server, but does not include scheme, host or port).

1015 The following rules apply to the use of port numbers in URIs that identify IPP objects:

- 1016 1. If the URI scheme allows the port number to be explicitly included in the URI string, and a port
1017 number is specified within the URI, then that port number MUST be used by the client to contact
1018 the IPP object.
1019
1020 2. If the URI scheme allows the port number to be explicitly included in the URI string, and a port
1021 number is not specified within the URI, then default port number implied by that URI scheme
1022 MUST be used by the client to contact the IPP object.
1023
1024 3. If the URI scheme does not allow an explicit port number to be specified within the URI, then the
1025 default port number implied by that URI MUST be used by the client to contact the IPP object.
1026

1027 Note: The IPP **E**ncoding and **T**ransport document [IPP-PRO] shows a mapping of IPP onto HTTP/1.1
1028 and defines a new default port number for using IPP over HTTP/1.1.

1029 3.1.6 Operation Status Codes and Messages

1030 Every operation response includes a REQUIRED "status-code" parameter and an OPTIONAL "status-
1031 message" operation attribute. The "status-code" provides information on the processing of a request. A
1032 "status-message" attribute provides a short textual description of the status of the operation. The status
1033 code is intended for use by automata, and the status message is intended for the human end user. If a
1034 response does include a "status-message" attribute, an IPP client NEED NOT examine or display the
1035 message, however it SHOULD do so in some implementation specific manner.

1036 The "status-code" value is a numeric value that has semantic meaning. The "status-code" syntax is
1037 similar to a "type2 enum" (see section 4.1 on "Attribute Syntaxes") except that values can range only
1038 from 0x0000 to 0x7FFF. Section 14 describes the status codes, assigns the numeric values, and suggests
1039 a corresponding status message for each status code. The "status-message" attribute's syntax is
1040 "text(255)". A client implementation of IPP SHOULD convert status code values into any localized
1041 message that has semantic meaning to the end user.

1042 If the Printer object supports the "status-message" operation attribute, the Printer object MUST be able
1043 to generate this message in any of the natural languages identified by the Printer object's "generated-
1044 natural-language-supported" attribute (see the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute specified
1045 in section 3.1.4.1). As described in section 3.1.4.1 for any returned 'text' attribute, if there is a choice for
1046 generating this message, the Printer object uses the natural language indicated by the value of the
1047 "attributes-natural-language" in the client request if supported, otherwise the Printer object uses the
1048 value in the Printer object's own "natural-language-configured" attribute. If the Printer object supports
1049 the "status-message" operation attribute, it SHOULD use the REQUIRED 'utf-8' charset to return a status
1050 message for the following error status codes (see section 14): 'client-error-bad-request', 'client-error-
1051 charset-not-supported', 'server-error-internal-error', 'server-error-operation-not-supported', and 'server-
1052 error-version-not-supported'. In this case, it MUST set the value of the "attributes-charset" operation
1053 attribute to 'utf-8' in the error response.

1054 3.1.7 Versions

1055 Each operation request and response carries with it a "version-number" parameter. Each value of the
1056 "version-number" is in the form "X.Y" where X is the major version number and Y is the minor version
1057 number. By including a version number in the client request, it allows the client to identify which
1058 version of IPP it is interested in using. If the IPP object does not support that version, the object
1059 responds with a status code of 'server-error-version-not-supported' along with the closest version number
1060 that is supported (see section 14.1.5.4).

1061 There is no version negotiation per se. However, if after receiving a 'server-error-version-not-supported'
1062 status code from an IPP object, there is nothing that prevents a client from trying again with a different
1063 version number. In order to conform to IPP/4.01.1, ~~an~~ an IPP object implementations MUST support at
1064 least versions '1.1+0' and 1.0.

1065 There is only one notion of "version number" that covers both IPP Model and IPP Protocol changes.
1066 Thus the version number MUST change when introducing a new version of the Model and Semantics
1067 document [IPP-MOD] or a new version of the "Encoding and Transport" document [IPP-PRO].

1068 Changes to the major version number indicate structural or syntactic changes that make it impossible for
1069 older version of IPP clients and Printer objects to correctly parse and process the new or changed
1070 attributes, operations and responses. If the major version number changes, the minor version numbers is
1071 set to zero. As an example, adding the "ipp-attribute-fidelity" attribute (if it had not been part of version
1072 ~~1.01.1~~), would have required a change to the major version number. Items that might affect the
1073 changing of the major version number include any changes to the Model and Semantics document [IPP-
1074 MOD] or the "Encoding and Transport" document [IPP-PRO] itself, such as:

- 1075 - reordering of ordered attributes or attribute sets
- 1076 - changes to the syntax of existing attributes
- 1077 - changing Operation or Job Template attributes from OPTIONAL to REQUIRED and vice versa
- 1078 - adding REQUIRED (for an IPP object to support) operation attributes
- 1079 - adding REQUIRED (for an IPP object to support) operation attribute groups
- 1080 - adding values to existing operation attributes
- 1081 - adding REQUIRED operations

1082

1083 Changes to the minor version number indicate the addition of new features, attributes and attribute
1084 values that may not be understood by all IPP objects, but which can be ignored if not understood. Items
1085 that might affect the changing of the minor version number include any changes to the model objects and
1086 attributes but not the encoding and transport rules [IPP-PRO] (except adding attribute syntaxes).

1087 Examples of such changes are:

- 1088 - grouping all extensions not included in a previous version into a new version
- 1089 - adding new attribute values
- 1090 - adding new object attributes
- 1091 - adding OPTIONAL (for an IPP object to support) operation attributes (i.e., those attributes that an
1092 IPP object can ignore without confusing clients)
- 1093 - adding OPTIONAL (for an IPP object to support) operation attribute groups (i.e., those attributes
1094 that an IPP object can ignore without confusing clients)
- 1095 - adding new attribute syntaxes
- 1096 - adding OPTIONAL operations
- 1097 - changing Job Description attributes or Printer Description attributes from OPTIONAL to
1098 REQUIRED or vice versa.

1099

1100 The encoding of the ~~"operation-id", the "version-number", the "status-code", and the "request-id"~~ MUST
1101 NOT change over any version number (either major or minor). This rule guarantees that all future
1102 versions will be backwards compatible with all previous versions (at least for checking the ~~"operation-
1103 id", the "version-number", and the "request-id"~~). In addition, any protocol elements (attributes, error
1104 codes, tags, etc.) that are not carried forward from one version to the next are deprecated so that they can
1105 never be reused with new semantics.

1106 Implementations that support a certain major version NEED NOT support ALL previous versions. As
1107 each new major version is defined (through the release of a new specification), that major version will
1108 specify which previous major versions MUST be supported in compliant implementations.

1109 3.1.8 Job Creation Operations

1110 In order to "submit a print job" and create a new Job object, a client issues a create request. A create
1111 request is any one of following three operation requests:

- 1112 - The Print-Job Request: A client that wants to submit a print job with only a single document uses
1113 the Print-Job operation. The operation allows for the client to "push" the document data to the
1114 Printer object by including the document data in the request itself.
1115
- 1116 - The Print-URI Request: A client that wants to submit a print job with only a single document
1117 (where the Printer object "pulls" the document data instead of the client "pushing" the data to the
1118 Printer object) uses the Print-URI operation. In this case, the client includes in the request only a
1119 URI reference to the document data (not the document data itself).
1120
- 1121 - The Create-Job Request: A client that wants to submit a print job with multiple documents uses the
1122 Create-Job operation. This operation is followed by an arbitrary number of Send-Document
1123 and/or Send-URI operations (each creating another document for the newly create Job object).
1124 The Send-Document operation includes the document data in the request (the client "pushes" the
1125 document data to the printer), and the Send-URI operation includes only a URI reference to the
1126 document data in the request (the Printer "pulls" the document data from the referenced location).
1127 The last Send-Document or Send-URI request for a given Job object includes a "last-document"
1128 operation attribute set to 'true' indicating that this is the last request.
1129

1130 Throughout this model specification, the term "create request" is used to refer to any of these three
1131 operation requests.

1132 A Create-Job operation followed by only one Send-Document operation is semantically equivalent to a
1133 Print-Job operation, however, for performance reasons, the client SHOULD use the Print-Job operation
1134 for all single document jobs. Also, Print-Job is a REQUIRED operation (all implementations MUST
1135 support it) whereas Create-Job is an OPTIONAL operation, hence some implementations might not
1136 support it.

1137 Job submission time is the point in time when a client issues a create request. The initial state of every
1138 Job object is the 'pending' or 'pending-held' state. Later, the Printer object begins processing the print
1139 job. At this point in time, the Job object's state moves to 'processing'. This is known as job processing
1140 time. There are validation checks that must be done at job submission time and others that must be
1141 performed at job processing time.

1142 At job submission time and at the time a Validate-Job operation is received, the Printer MUST do the
1143 following:

- 1144 1. Process the client supplied attributes and either accept or reject the request
- 1145 2. Validate the syntax of and support for the scheme of any client supplied URI

1146

1147 At job submission time the Printer object MUST validate whether or not the supplied attributes, attribute
1148 syntaxes, and values are supported by matching them with the Printer object's corresponding "xxx-

1149 supported" attributes. See section 3.2.1.2 for details. [IPP-IIG] presents suggested steps for an IPP
1150 object to either accept or reject any request and additional steps for processing create requests.

1151 At job submission time the Printer object NEED NOT perform the validation checks reserved for job
1152 processing time such as:

- 1153 1. Validating the document data
 - 1154 2. Validating the actual contents of any client supplied URI (resolve the reference and follow the link
1155 to the document data)
- 1156

1157 At job submission time, these additional job processing time validation checks are essentially useless,
1158 since they require actually parsing and interpreting the document data, are not guaranteed to be 100%
1159 accurate, and MUST be done, yet again, at job processing time. Also, in the case of a URI, checking for
1160 availability at job submission time does not guarantee availability at job processing time. In addition, at
1161 job processing time, the Printer object might discover any of the following conditions that were not
1162 detectable at job submission time:

- 1163 - runtime errors in the document data,
 - 1164 - nested document data that is in an unsupported format,
 - 1165 - the URI reference is no longer valid (i.e., the server hosting the document might be down), or
 - 1166 - any other job processing error
- 1167

1168 At job processing time, since the Printer object has already responded with a successful status code in
1169 the response to the create request, if the Printer object detects an error, the Printer object is unable to
1170 inform the end user of the error with an operation status code. In this case, the Printer, depending on the
1171 error, can set the "job-state", "job-state-reasons", or "job-state-message" attributes to the appropriate
1172 value(s) so that later queries can report the correct job status.

1173 Note: Asynchronous notification of events is outside the scope of [this IPP/1.01.1 document](#).

1174 3.2 Printer Operations

1175 All Printer operations are directed at Printer objects. A client MUST always supply the "printer-uri"
1176 operation attribute in order to identify the correct target of the operation.

1177 3.2.1 Print-Job Operation

1178 This REQUIRED operation allows a client to submit a print job with only one document and supply the
1179 document data (rather than just a reference to the data). See Section 16 for the suggested steps for
1180 processing create operations and their Operation and Job Template attributes.

1181 3.2.1.1 Print-Job Request

1182 The following groups of attributes are supplied as part of the Print-Job Request:

1183 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1184 Natural Language and Character Set:

1185 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1186 3.1.4.1. The Printer object MUST copy these values to the corresponding Job Description
1187 attributes described in sections 4.3.23 and 4.3.24.

1188

1189 Target:

1190 The "printer-uri" (uri) operation attribute which is the target for this operation as described in
1191 section 3.1.5.

1192

1193 Requesting User Name:

1194 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) attribute SHOULD be supplied by the client as
1195 described in section 8.3.

1196

1197 "job-name" (name(MAX)):

1198 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1199 attribute. It contains the client supplied Job name. If this attribute is supplied by the client, its
1200 value is used for the "job-name" attribute of the newly created Job object. The client MAY
1201 automatically include any information that will help the end-user distinguish amongst his/her
1202 jobs, such as the name of the application program along with information from the document,
1203 such as the document name, document subject, or source file name. If this attribute is not
1204 supplied by the client, the Printer generates a name to use in the "job-name" attribute of the
1205 newly created Job object (see Section 4.3.5).

1206

1207 "ipp-attribute-fidelity" (boolean):

1208 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1209 attribute. The value 'true' indicates that total fidelity to client supplied Job Template attributes
1210 and values is required, else the Printer object MUST reject the Print-Job request. The value
1211 'false' indicates that a reasonable attempt to print the Job object is acceptable and the Printer
1212 object MUST accept the Print-job request. If not supplied, the Printer object assumes the value is
1213 'false'. All Printer objects MUST support both types of job processing. See section 16 for a full
1214 description of "ipp-attribute-fidelity" and its relationship to other attributes, especially the Printer
1215 object's "pdl-override-supported" attribute.

1216

1217 "document-name" (name(MAX)):

1218 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1219 attribute. It contains the client supplied document name. The document name MAY be
1220 different than the Job name. Typically, the client software automatically supplies the document
1221 name on behalf of the end user by using a file name or an application generated name. If this
1222 attribute is supplied, its value can be used in a manner defined by each implementation.
1223 Examples include: printed along with the Job (job start sheet, page adornments, etc.), used by
1224 accounting or resource tracking management tools, or even stored along with the document as a
1225 document level attribute. IPP/4.01.1 does not support the concept of document level attributes.

1226

1227 "document-format" (mimeType) :

1228 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1229 attribute. The value of this attribute identifies the format of the supplied document data. If the
1230 client does not supply this attribute, the Printer object assumes that the document data is in the
1231 format defined by the Printer object's "document-format-default" attribute. If the client supplies
1232 this attribute, but the value is not supported by the Printer object, i.e., the value is not one of the
1233 values of the Printer object's "document-format-supported" attribute, the Printer object MUST
1234 reject the request and return the 'client-error-document-format-not-supported' status code.

1235

1236 "document-natural-language" (naturalLanguage):

1237 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object OPTIONALLY supports
1238 this attribute. This attribute specifies the natural language of the document for those document-
1239 formats that require a specification of the natural language in order to image the document
1240 unambiguously. There are no particular values required for the Printer object to support.

1241

1242 "compression" (type3 keyword)

1243 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object OPTIONALLY supports
1244 this attribute and the "compression-supported" attribute (see section 4.4.29). The client supplied
1245 "compression" operation attribute identifies the compression algorithm used on the document
1246 data. If the client omits this attribute, the Printer object MUST assume that the data is not
1247 compressed. If the client supplies the attribute and the Printer object supports the attribute, the
1248 Printer object uses the corresponding decompression algorithm on the document data. If the
1249 client supplies this attribute, but the value is not supported by the Printer object, i.e., the value is
1250 not one of the values of the Printer object's "compression-supported" attribute, the Printer object
1251 MUST copy the attribute and its value to the Unsupported Attributes response group, reject the
1252 request, and return the 'client-error-attributes-or-values-not-supported' status code. If the client
1253 supplies this attribute, but this attribute is not supported by the Printer object, i.e., the
1254 "compression-supported" attribute is not one of the Printer's Printer Description attributes, the
1255 Printer object MUST copy the attribute to the Unsupported Attributes response group changing
1256 the value to the out-of-band 'unsupported' value (see section 4.1), reject the request, and return
1257 the 'client-error-attributes-or-values-not-supported' status code. See section 3.2.1.2 for returning
1258 unsupported attributes and values.

1259

1260 "job-k-octets" (integer(0:MAX))

1261 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object OPTIONALLY supports
1262 this attribute and the "job-k-octets-supported" attribute (see section 4.4.30). The client supplied
1263 "job-k-octets" operation attribute identifies the total size of the document(s) in K octets being
1264 submitted (see section 4.3.17 for the complete semantics). If the client supplies the attribute and
1265 the Printer object supports the attribute, the value of the attribute is used to populate the Job
1266 object's "job-k-octets" Job Description attribute.

1267

1268 Note: For this attribute and the following two attributes ("job-impressions", and "job-media-
1269 sheets"), if the client supplies the attribute, but the Printer object does not support the attribute,
1270 the Printer object ignores the client-supplied value. If the client supplies the attribute and the
1271 Printer supports the attribute, and the value is within the range of the corresponding Printer

1272 object's "xxx-supported" attribute, the Printer object MUST use the value to populate the Job
1273 object's "xxx" attribute. If the client supplies the attribute and the Printer supports the attribute,
1274 but the value is outside the range of the corresponding Printer object's "xxx-supported" attribute,
1275 the Printer object MUST copy the attribute and its value to the Unsupported Attributes response
1276 group, reject the request, and return the 'client-error-attributes-or-values-not-supported' status
1277 code. If the client does not supply the attribute, the Printer object MAY choose to populate the
1278 corresponding Job object attribute depending on whether the Printer object supports the attribute
1279 and is able to calculate or discern the correct value.

1280
1281 "job-impressions" (integer(0:MAX))

1282 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object OPTIONALLY supports
1283 this attribute and the "job-impressions-supported" attribute (see section 4.4.31). The client
1284 supplied "job-impressions" operation attribute identifies the total size in number of impressions
1285 of the document(s) being submitted (see section 4.3.18 for the complete semantics).

1286
1287 See note under "job-k-octets".

1288
1289 "job-media-sheets" (integer(0:MAX))

1290 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object OPTIONALLY supports
1291 this attribute and the "job-media-sheets-supported" attribute (see section 4.4.32). The client
1292 supplied "job-media-sheets" operation attribute identifies the total number of media sheets to be
1293 produced for this job (see section 4.3.19 for the complete semantics).

1294
1295 See note under "job-k-octets".

1296

1297 Group 2: Job Template Attributes

1298 The client OPTIONALLY supplies a set of Job Template attributes as defined in section 4.2. If
1299 the client is not supplying any Job Template attributes in the request, the client SHOULD omit
1300 Group 2 rather than sending an empty group. However, a Printer object MUST be able to accept
1301 an empty group.

1302

1303 Group 3: Document Content

1304 The client MUST supply the document data to be processed.

1305

1306 Note: In addition to the MANDATORY parameters required for every operation request, the simplest
1307 Print-Job Request consists of just the "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" operation
1308 attributes; the "printer-uri" target operation attribute; the Document Content and nothing else. In this
1309 simple case, the Printer object:

- 1310 - creates a new Job object (the Job object contains a single document),
- 1311 - stores a generated Job name in the "job-name" attribute in the natural language and charset
1312 requested (see Section 3.1.4.1) (if those are supported, otherwise using the Printer object's default
1313 natural language and charset), and

1314 - at job processing time, uses its corresponding default value attributes for the supported Job
1315 Template attributes that were not supplied by the client as IPP attribute or embedded instructions
1316 in the document data.
1317

1318 3.2.1.2 Print-Job Response

1319 The Printer object MUST return to the client the following sets of attributes as part of the Print-Job
1320 Response:

1321 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1322 Status Message:

1323 In addition to the REQUIRED status code returned in every response, the response
1324 OPTIONALLY includes a "status-message" (text) operation attribute as described in sections 14
1325 and 3.1.6. If the client supplies unsupported or conflicting Job Template attributes or values, the
1326 Printer object MUST reject or accept the Print-Job request depending on the whether the client
1327 supplied a 'true' or 'false' value for the "ipp-attribute-fidelity" operation attribute. See the
1328 Implementer's Guide [IPP-IIG] for a complete description of the suggested steps for processing a
1329 create request.
1330

1331 Natural Language and Character Set:

1332 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1333 3.1.4.2.
1334

1335 Group 2: Unsupported Attributes

1336 This is a set of Operation and Job Template attributes supplied by the client (in the request) that
1337 are not supported by the Printer object or that conflict with one another (see the Implementer's
1338 Guide [IPP-IIG]). If the Printer object is not returning any Unsupported Attributes in the
1339 response, the Printer object SHOULD omit Group 2 rather than sending an empty group.
1340 However, a client MUST be able to accept an empty group.
1341

1342 Unsupported attributes fall into three categories:

- 1343 1. The Printer object does not support the supplied attribute (no matter what the attribute syntax
1344 or value).
- 1345 2. The Printer object does support the attribute, but does not support some or all of the particular
1346 attribute syntaxes or values supplied by the client (i.e., the Printer object does not have
1347 those attribute syntaxes or values in its corresponding "xxx-supported" attribute).
- 1348 3. The Printer object does support the attributes and values supplied, but the particular values are
1349 in conflict with one another, because they violate a constraint, such as not being able to
1350 staple transparencies.
1351
1352

1353 In the case of an unsupported attribute name, the Printer object returns the client-supplied
1354 attribute with a substituted "out-of-band" value of 'unsupported' indicating no support for the
1355 attribute itself (see the beginning of section 4.1).
1356

1357 In the case of a supported attribute with one or more unsupported attribute syntaxes or values, the
1358 Printer object simply returns the client-supplied attribute with the unsupported attribute syntaxes
1359 or values as supplied by the client. This indicates support for the attribute, but no support for that
1360 particular attribute syntax or value. If the client supplies a multi-valued attribute with more than
1361 one value and the Printer object supports the attribute but only supports a subset of the client-
1362 supplied attribute syntaxes or values, the Printer object MUST return only those attribute
1363 syntaxes or values that are unsupported.
1364

1365 In the case of two (or more) supported attribute values that are in conflict with one another
1366 (although each is supported independently, the values conflict when requested together within the
1367 same job), the Printer object MUST return all the values that it ignores or substitutes to resolve
1368 the conflict, but not any of the values that it is still using. The choice for exactly how to resolve
1369 the conflict is implementation dependent. See The Implementer's Guide [IPP-IIG] for an
1370 example.
1371

1372 In these three cases, the value of the "ipp-attribute-fidelity" supplied by the client does not affect
1373 what the Printer object returns. The value of "ipp-attribute-fidelity" only affects whether the
1374 Print-Job operation is accepted or rejected. If the job is accepted, the client may query the job
1375 using the Get-Job-Attributes operation requesting the unsupported attributes that were returned in
1376 the create response to see which attributes were ignored (not stored on the Job object) and which
1377 attributes were stored with other (substituted) values.
1378

1379 Group 3: Job Object Attributes

1380 "job-uri" (uri):

1381 The Printer object MUST return the Job object's URI by returning the contents of the
1382 REQUIRED "job-uri" Job object attribute. The client uses the Job object's URI when directing
1383 operations at the Job object. The Printer object always uses its configured security policy when
1384 creating the new URI. However, if the Printer object supports more than one URI, the Printer
1385 object also uses information about which URI was used in the Print-Job Request to generated the
1386 new URI so that the new URI references the correct access channel. In other words, if the Print-
1387 Job Request comes in over a secure channel, the Printer object MUST generate a Job URI that
1388 uses the secure channel as well.
1389

1390 "job-id" (integer(1:MAX)):

1391 The Printer object MUST return the Job object's Job ID by returning the REQUIRED "job-id"
1392 Job object attribute. The client uses this "job-id" attribute in conjunction with the "printer-uri"
1393 attribute used in the Print-Job Request when directing Job operations at the Printer object.
1394

1395 "job-state":
1396 The Printer object **MUST** return the Job object's **REQUIRED** "job-state" attribute. The value of
1397 this attribute (along with the value of the next attribute "job-state-reasons") is taken from a
1398 "snapshot" of the new Job object at some meaningful point in time (implementation defined)
1399 between when the Printer object receives the Print-Job Request and when the Printer object
1400 returns the response.
1401
1402 "job-state-reasons":
1403 The Printer object **OPTIONALLY** returns the Job object's **OPTIONAL** "job-state-reasons"
1404 attribute. If the Printer object supports this attribute then it **MUST** be returned in the response. If
1405 this attribute is not returned in the response, the client can assume that the "job-state-reasons"
1406 attribute is not supported and will not be returned in a subsequent Job object query.
1407
1408 "job-state-message":
1409 The Printer object **OPTIONALLY** returns the Job object's **OPTIONAL** "job-state-message"
1410 attribute. If the Printer object supports this attribute then it **MUST** be returned in the response. If
1411 this attribute is not returned in the response, the client can assume that the "job-state-message"
1412 attribute is not supported and will not be returned in a subsequent Job object query.
1413
1414 "number-of-intervening-jobs":
1415 The Printer object **OPTIONALLY** returns the Job object's **OPTIONAL** "number-of-intervening-
1416 jobs" attribute. If the Printer object supports this attribute then it **MUST** be returned in the
1417 response. If this attribute is not returned in the response, the client can assume that the "number-
1418 of-intervening-jobs" attribute is not supported and will not be returned in a subsequent Job object
1419 query.
1420
1421 Note: Since any printer state information which affects a job's state is reflected in the "job-state"
1422 and "job-state-reasons" attributes, it is sufficient to return only these attributes and no specific
1423 printer status attributes.
1424
1425 Note: In addition to the **MANDATORY** parameters required for every operation response, the simplest
1426 response consists of the just the "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" operation
1427 attributes and the "job-uri", "job-id", and "job-state" Job Object Attributes. In this simplest case, the
1428 status code is "successful-ok" and there is no "status-message" operation attribute.

1429 3.2.2 Print-URI Operation

1430 This **OPTIONAL** operation is identical to the Print-Job operation (section 3.2.1) except that a client
1431 supplies a URI reference to the document data using the "document-uri" (uri) operation attribute (in
1432 Group 1) rather than including the document data itself. Before returning the response, the Printer
1433 **MUST** validate that the Printer supports the retrieval method (e.g., http, ftp, etc.) implied by the URI,
1434 and **MUST** check for valid URI syntax. If the client-supplied URI scheme is not supported, i.e. the value
1435 is not in the Printer object's "referenced-uri-scheme-supported" attribute, the Printer object **MUST** reject
1436 the request and return the 'client-error-uri-scheme-not-supported' status code. See The Implementer's

1437 Guide [IPP-IIG] for suggested additional checks. The Printer NEED NOT follow the reference and
1438 validate the contents of the reference.

1439 If the Printer object supports this operation, it MUST support the "reference-uri-schemes-supported"
1440 Printer attribute (see section 4.4.24).

1441 It is up to the IPP object to interpret the URI and subsequently "pull" the document from the source
1442 referenced by the URI string.

1443 3.2.3 Validate-Job Operation

1444 This REQUIRED operation is similar to the Print-Job operation (section 3.2.1) except that a client
1445 supplies no document data and the Printer allocates no resources (i.e., it does not create a new Job
1446 object). This operation is used only to verify capabilities of a printer object against whatever attributes
1447 are supplied by the client in the Validate-Job request. By using the Validate-Job operation a client can
1448 validate that an identical Print-Job operation (with the document data) would be accepted. The Validate-
1449 Job operation also performs the same security negotiation as the Print-Job operation (see section 8), so
1450 that a client can check that the client and Printer object security requirements can be met before
1451 performing a Print-Job operation.

1452 Note: The Validate-Job operation does not accept a "document-uri" attribute in order to allow a client to
1453 check that the same Print-URI operation will be accepted, since the client doesn't send the data with the
1454 Print-URI operation. The client SHOULD just issue the Print-URI request.

1455 The Printer object returns the same status codes, Operation Attributes (Group 1) and Unsupported
1456 Attributes (Group 2) as the Print-Job operation. However, no Job Object Attributes (Group 3) are
1457 returned, since no Job object is created.

1458 3.2.4 Create-Job Operation

1459 This OPTIONAL operation is similar to the Print-Job operation (section 3.2.1) except that in the Create-
1460 Job request, a client does not supply document data or any reference to document data. Also, the client
1461 does not supply any of the "document-name", "document-format", "compression", or "document-natural-
1462 language" operation attributes. This operation is followed by one or more Send-Document or Send-URI
1463 operations. In each of those operation requests, the client OPTIONALLY supplies the "document-
1464 name", "document-format", and "document-natural-language" attributes for each document in the multi-
1465 document Job object.

1466 If a Printer object supports the Create-Job operation, it MUST also support the Send-Document
1467 operation and also MAY support the Send-URI operation.

1468 If the Printer object supports this operation, it MUST support the "multiple-operation-time-out" Printer
1469 attribute (see section 4.4.28).

1470 ~~In addition to the Print Job status codes in the following additional error status codes not applicable to~~
1471 ~~Print Job MAY be returned:~~

1472 3.2.5 Get-Printer-Attributes Operation

1473 This REQUIRED operation allows a client to request the values of the attributes of a Printer object. In
1474 the request, the client supplies the set of Printer attribute names and/or attribute group names in which
1475 the requester is interested. In the response, the Printer object returns a corresponding attribute set with
1476 the appropriate attribute values filled in.

1477 For Printer objects, the possible names of attribute groups are:

- 1478 - 'job-template': all of the Job Template attributes that apply to a Printer object (the last two columns
1479 of the table in Section 4.2).
 - 1480 - 'printer-description': the attributes specified in Section 4.4.
 - 1481 - 'all': the special group 'all' that includes all supported attributes.
- 1482

1483 Since a client MAY request specific attributes or named groups, there is a potential that there is some
1484 overlap. For example, if a client requests, 'printer-name' and 'all', the client is actually requesting the
1485 "printer-name" attribute twice: once by naming it explicitly, and once by inclusion in the 'all' group. In
1486 such cases, the Printer object NEED NOT return each attribute only once in the response even if it is
1487 requested multiple times. The client SHOULD NOT request the same attribute in multiple ways.

1488 It is NOT REQUIRED that a Printer object support all attributes belonging to a group (since some
1489 attributes are OPTIONAL). However, it is REQUIRED that each Printer object support all group names.

1490 3.2.5.1 Get-Printer-Attributes Request

1491 The following sets of attributes are part of the Get-Printer-Attributes Request:

1492 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1493 Natural Language and Character Set:

1494 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1495 3.1.4.1.

1496

1497 Target:

1498 The "printer-uri" (uri) operation attribute which is the target for this operation as described in
1499 section 3.1.5.

1500

1501 Requesting User Name:

1502 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) attribute SHOULD be supplied by the client as
1503 described in section 8.3.

1504

1505 "requested-attributes" (1setOf keyword) :

1506 The client OPTIONALLY supplies a set of attribute names and/or attribute group names in
1507 whose values the requester is interested. The Printer object MUST support this attribute. If the
1508 client omits this attribute, the Printer MUST respond as if this attribute had been supplied with a
1509 value of 'all'.

1510

1511 "document-format" (mimeMediaType) :

1512 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1513 attribute. This attribute is useful for a Printer object to determine the set of supported attribute
1514 values that relate to the requested document format. The Printer object MUST return the
1515 attributes and values that it uses to validate a job on a create or Validate-Job operation in which
1516 this document format is supplied. The Printer object SHOULD return only (1) those attributes
1517 that are supported for the specified format and (2) the attribute values that are supported for the
1518 specified document format. By specifying the document format, the client can get the Printer
1519 object to eliminate the attributes and values that are not supported for a specific document
1520 format. For example, a Printer object might have multiple interpreters to support both
1521 'application/postscript' (for PostScript) and 'text/plain' (for text) documents. However, for only
1522 one of those interpreters might the Printer object be able to support "number-up" with values of
1523 '1', '2', and '4'. For the other interpreter it might be able to only support "number-up" with a value
1524 of '1'. Thus a client can use the Get-Printer-Attributes operation to obtain the attributes and
1525 values that will be used to accept/reject a create job operation.

1526

1527 If the Printer object does not distinguish between different sets of supported values for each
1528 different document format when validating jobs in the create and Validate-Job operations, it
1529 MUST NOT distinguish between different document formats in the Get-Printer-Attributes
1530 operation. If the Printer object does distinguish between different sets of supported values for
1531 each different document format specified by the client, this specialization applies only to the
1532 following Printer object attributes:

1533

- 1534 - Printer attributes that are Job Template attributes ("xxx-default" "xxx-supported", and "xxx-
1535 ready" in the Table in Section 4.2),
- 1536 - "pdl-override-supported",
- 1537 - "compression-supported",
- 1538 - "job-k-octets-supported",
- 1539 - "job-impressions-supported",
- 1540 - "job-media-sheets-supported"
- 1541 - "printer-driver-installer",
- 1542 - "color-supported", and
- 1543 - "reference-uri-schemes-supported"

1544

1545 The values of all other Printer object attributes (including "document-format-supported") remain
1546 invariant with respect to the client supplied document format (except for new Printer description
1547 attribute as registered according to section 6.2).

1548

1549 If the client omits this "document-format" operation attribute, the Printer object MUST respond
1550 as if the attribute had been supplied with the value of the Printer object's "document-format-
1551 default" attribute. It is recommended that the client always supply a value for "document-
1552 format", since the Printer object's "document-format-default" may be 'application/octet-stream',
1553 in which case the returned attributes and values are for the union of the document formats that

1554 the Printer can automatically sense. For more details, see the description of the
1555 'mimeMediaType' attribute syntax in section 4.1.9.

1556
1557 If the client supplies a value for the "document-format" Operation attribute that is not supported
1558 by the Printer, i.e., is not among the values of the Printer object's "document-format-supported"
1559 attribute, the Printer object MUST reject the operation and return the 'client-error-document-
1560 format-not-supported' status code.
1561

1562 3.2.5.2 Get-Printer-Attributes Response

1563 The Printer object returns the following sets of attributes as part of the Get-Printer-Attributes Response:

1564 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1565 Status Message:

1566 In addition to the REQUIRED status code returned in every response, the response
1567 OPTIONALLY includes a "status-message" (text) operation attribute as described in section
1568 3.1.6.

1569 Natural Language and Character Set:

1570 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1571 3.1.4.2.
1572
1573

1574 Group 2: Unsupported Attributes

1575 This is a set of Operation attributes supplied by the client (in the request) that are not supported
1576 by the Printer object or that conflict with one another (see sections 3.2.1.2 and 16). The response
1577 NEED NOT contain the "requested-attributes" operation attribute with any supplied values
1578 (attribute keywords) that were requested by the client but are not supported by the IPP object. If
1579 the Printer object is not returning any Unsupported Attributes in the response, the Printer object
1580 SHOULD omit Group 2 rather than sending an empty group. However, a client MUST be able
1581 to accept an empty group.
1582

1583 Group 3: Printer Object Attributes

1584 This is the set of requested attributes and their current values. The Printer object ignores (does
1585 not respond with) any requested attribute which is not supported. The Printer object MAY
1586 respond with a subset of the supported attributes and values, depending on the security policy in
1587 force. However, the Printer object MUST respond with the 'unknown' value for any supported
1588 attribute (including all REQUIRED attributes) for which the Printer object does not know the
1589 value. Also the Printer object MUST respond with the 'no-value' for any supported attribute
1590 (including all REQUIRED attributes) for which the system administrator has not configured a
1591 value. See the description of the "out-of-band" values in the beginning of Section 4.1.
1592

1593 3.2.6 Get-Jobs Operation

1594 This REQUIRED operation allows a client to retrieve the list of Job objects belonging to the target
1595 Printer object. The client may also supply a list of Job attribute names and/or attribute group names. A
1596 group of Job object attributes will be returned for each Job object that is returned.

1597 This operation is similar to the Get-Job-Attributes operation, except that this Get-Jobs operation returns
1598 attributes from possibly more than one object (see the description of Job attribute group names in section
1599 3.3.4).

1600 3.2.6.1 Get-Jobs Request

1601 The client submits the Get-Jobs request to a Printer object.

1602 The following groups of attributes are part of the Get-Jobs Request:

1603 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1604 Natural Language and Character Set:

1605 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1606 3.1.4.1.

1607

1608 Target:

1609 The "printer-uri" (uri) operation attribute which is the target for this operation as described in
1610 section 3.1.5.

1611

1612 Requesting User Name:

1613 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) attribute SHOULD be supplied by the client as
1614 described in section 8.3.

1615

1616 "limit" (integer(1:MAX)):

1617 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1618 attribute. It is an integer value that indicates a limit to the number of Job objects returned. The
1619 limit is a "stateless limit" in that if the value supplied by the client is 'N', then only the first 'N'
1620 jobs are returned in the Get-Jobs Response. There is no mechanism to allow for the next 'M' jobs
1621 after the first 'N' jobs. If the client does not supply this attribute, the Printer object responds with
1622 all applicable jobs.

1623

1624 "requested-attributes" (1setOf keyword):

1625 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1626 attribute. It is a set of Job attribute names and/or attribute groups names in whose values the
1627 requester is interested. This set of attributes is returned for each Job object that is returned. The
1628 allowed attribute group names are the same as those defined in the Get-Job-Attributes operation
1629 in section 3.3.4. If the client does not supply this attribute, the Printer MUST respond as if the
1630 client had supplied this attribute with two values: 'job-uri' and 'job-id'.

1631

1632 "which-jobs" (keyword):

1633 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1634 attribute. It indicates which Job objects MUST be returned by the Printer object. The values for
1635 this attribute are:

1636 'completed': This includes any Job object whose state is 'completed', 'canceled', or 'aborted'.
1637 'not-completed': This includes any Job object whose state is 'pending', 'processing',
1638 'processing-stopped', or 'pending-held'.
1639

1640 A Printer object MUST support both values. However, if the implementation does not keep jobs
1641 in the 'completed', 'canceled', and 'aborted' states, then it returns no jobs when the 'completed'
1642 value is supplied.
1643

1644 If a client supplies some other value, the Printer object MUST copy the attribute and the
1645 unsupported value to the Unsupported Attributes response group, reject the request, and return
1646 the 'client-error-attributes-or-values-not-supported' status code.
1647

1648 If the client does not supply this attribute, the Printer object MUST respond as if the client had
1649 supplied the attribute with a value of 'not-completed'.
1650

1651 "my-jobs" (boolean):

1652 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1653 attribute. It indicates whether all jobs or just the jobs submitted by the requesting user of this
1654 request MUST be returned by the Printer object. If the client does not supply this attribute, the
1655 Printer object MUST respond as if the client had supplied the attribute with a value of 'false', i.e.,
1656 all jobs. The means for authenticating the requesting user and matching the jobs is described in
1657 section 8.
1658

1659 3.2.6.2 Get-Jobs Response

1660 The Printer object returns all of the Job objects that match the criteria as defined by the attribute values
1661 supplied by the client in the request. It is possible that no Job objects are returned since there may
1662 literally be no Job objects at the Printer, or there may be no Job objects that match the criteria supplied
1663 by the client. If the client requests any Job attributes at all, there is a set of Job Object Attributes
1664 returned for each Job object.

1665 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1666 Status Message:

1667 In addition to the REQUIRED status code returned in every response, the response
1668 OPTIONALLY includes a "status-message" (text) operation attribute as described in sections 14
1669 and 3.1.6.
1670

1671 Natural Language and Character Set:

1672 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1673 3.1.4.2.

1674

1675 Group 2: Unsupported Attributes

1676 This is a set of Operation attributes supplied by the client (in the request) that are not supported
1677 by the Printer object or that conflict with one another (see sections 3.2.1.2 and the Implementer's
1678 Guide [IPP-IIG]). The response NEED NOT contain the "requested-attributes" operation
1679 attribute with any supplied values (attribute keywords) that were requested by the client but are
1680 not supported by the IPP object. If the Printer object is not returning any Unsupported Attributes
1681 in the response, the Printer object SHOULD omit Group 2 rather than sending an empty group.
1682 However, a client MUST be able to accept an empty group.

1683

1684 Groups 3 to N: Job Object Attributes

1685 The Printer object responds with one set of Job Object Attributes for each returned Job object.
1686 The Printer object ignores (does not respond with) any requested attribute or value which is not
1687 supported or which is restricted by the security policy in force, including whether the requesting
1688 user is the user that submitted the job (job originating user) or not (see section 8). However, the
1689 Printer object MUST respond with the 'unknown' value for any supported attribute (including all
1690 REQUIRED attributes) for which the Printer object does not know the value, unless it would
1691 violate the security policy. See the description of the "out-of-band" values in the beginning of
1692 Section 4.1.

1693

1694 Jobs are returned in the following order:

- 1695 - If the client requests all 'completed' Jobs (Jobs in the 'completed', 'aborted', or 'canceled'
1696 states), then the Jobs are returned newest to oldest (with respect to actual completion
1697 time)
- 1698 - If the client requests all 'not-completed' Jobs (Jobs in the 'pending', 'processing', 'pending-
1699 held', and 'processing-stopped' states), then Jobs are returned in relative chronological
1700 order of expected time to complete (based on whatever scheduling algorithm is
1701 configured for the Printer object).

1702

1703 3.2.7 Pause-Printer Operation

1704 This OPTIONAL operation allows a client to stop the Printer object from scheduling jobs on all its
1705 devices. Depending on implementation, the Pause-Printer operation MAY also stop the Printer from
1706 processing the current job or jobs. Any job that is currently being printed is either stopped as soon as the
1707 implementation permits or is completed, depending on implementation. The Printer object MUST still
1708 accept create operations to create new jobs, but MUST prevent any jobs from entering the 'processing'
1709 state.

1710 If the Pause-Printer operation is supported, then the Resume-Printer operation MUST be supported, and
1711 vice-versa.

1712 The IPP Printer stops the current job(s) on its device(s) that were in the 'processing' or 'processing-
 1713 stopped' states as soon as the implementation permits. If the implementation supports the "printer-state-
 1714 reasons" attribute and the devices will take appreciable time to stop, the IPP Printer adds the 'moving-to-
 1715 paused' value to the Printer object's "printer-state-reasons" attribute (see section 4.4.11). When the
 1716 device(s) have all stopped, the IPP Printer transitions the Printer object to the 'stopped' state, removes the
 1717 'moving-to-paused' value, if present, and adds the 'paused' value to the Printer object's "printer-state-
 1718 reasons" attribute.

1719 When the current job(s) complete that were in the 'processing' state, the IPP Printer transitions them to
 1720 the 'completed' state. When the current job(s) stop in mid processing that were in the 'processing' state,
 1721 the IPP Printer transitions them to the 'processing-stopped' state and, if the "job-state-reasons" attribute is
 1722 supported, adds the 'printer-stopped' value to the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute.

1723 Note: for any jobs that are 'pending' or 'pending-held', the 'printer-stopped' value of the jobs' "job-state-
 1724 reasons" attribute also applies. However, the IPP Printer NEED NOT update those jobs' "job-state-
 1725 reasons" attributes and only need return the 'printer-stopped' value when those jobs are queried (so-called
 1726 "lazy evaluation").

1727 Whether the Pause-Printer operation affects jobs that were submitted to the device from other sources
 1728 than the IPP Printer object in the same way that the Pause-Printer operation affects jobs that were
 1729 submitted to the IPP Printer object using IPP, depends on implementation, i.e., on whether the IPP
 1730 protocol is being used as a universal management protocol or just to manage IPP jobs, respectively.

1731 The IPP Printer MUST accept the request in any state and transition the Printer to the indicated new
 1732 "printer-state" before returning as follows:

<u>Current</u> <u>"printer-state"</u>	<u>New</u> <u>"printer-state"</u>	<u>"printer-</u> <u>state-</u> <u>reasons"</u>	<u>IPP Printer's response status code and action:</u>
<u>'idle'</u>	<u>'stopped'</u>	<u>'paused'</u>	<u>'successful-ok'</u>
<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'moving-to-</u> <u>paused'</u>	<u>OPTION 1: 'successful-ok';</u> <u>Later, when all output has stopped, the "printer-</u> <u>state" becomes 'stopped', and the 'paused' value</u> <u>replaces the 'moving-to-paused' value in the</u> <u>"printer-state-reasons" attribute</u>
<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'stopped'</u>	<u>'paused'</u>	<u>OPTION 2: 'successful-ok';</u> <u>all device output stopped immediately</u>
<u>'stopped'</u>	<u>'stopped'</u>	<u>'paused'</u>	<u>'successful-ok'</u>

1733 Access Rights: The requesting user must be an operator or administrator of the Printer object.
 1734 Otherwise, the IPP Printer MUST reject the operation and return: 'client-error-forbidden', 'client-error-
 1735 not-authenticated', or 'client-error-not-authorized' as appropriate.

1736 3.2.73.2.7.1 Pause-Printer Request

1737 The following groups of attributes are part of the Pause-Printer Request:

1738 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1739 Natural Language and Character Set:

1740 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1741 3.1.4.1.

1742

1743 Target:

1744 The "printer-uri" (uri) operation attribute which is the target for this operation as described in
1745 section 3.1.5.

1746

1747 Requesting User Name:

1748 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) attribute SHOULD be supplied by the client as
1749 described in section 8.3.

1750 3.2.7.2 Pause-Printer Response

1751 The following groups of attributes are part of the Pause-Printer Response:

1752 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1753 Status Message:

1754 In addition to the REQUIRED status code returned in every response, the response
1755 OPTIONALLY includes a "status-message" (text) operation attribute as described in section
1756 3.1.6.

1757

1758 Natural Language and Character Set:

1759 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1760 3.1.4.2.

1761

1762 Group 2: Unsupported Attributes

1763 This is a set of Operation attributes supplied by the client (in the request) that are not supported
1764 by the Printer object or that conflict with one another (see sections 3.2.1.2 and 16).

1765 3.2.8 Resume-Printer Operation

1766 This operation allows a client to resume the Printer object scheduling jobs on all its devices. If the
1767 Printer object supports the "printer-state-reasons" attribute, it MUST remove the 'paused' and 'moving-
1768 to-paused' values from the Printer object's "printer-state-reasons" attribute, if present. If there are no
1769 other reasons to keep a device paused (such as media-jam), the IPP Printer transitions itself to the
1770 'processing' or 'idle' states, depending on whether there are jobs to be processed or not, respectively, and
1771 the device(s) resume processing jobs.

1772 If the Pause-Printer operation is supported, then the Resume-Printer operation MUST be supported, and
1773 vice-versa.

1774 The IPP Printer removes the 'printer-stopped' value from any job's "job-state-reasons" attributes
1775 contained in that Printer.

1776 The IPP Printer MUST accept the request in any state, transition the Printer object to the indicated new
 1777 state as follows:

<u>Current "printer-state"</u>	<u>New "printer-state"</u>	<u>IPP Printer's response status code and action:</u>
<u>'idle'</u>	<u>'idle'</u>	<u>'successful-ok'</u>
<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'successful-ok'</u>
<u>'stopped'</u>	<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'successful-ok';</u> <u>when there are jobs to be processed</u>
<u>'stopped'</u>	<u>'idle'</u>	<u>'successful-ok';</u> <u>when there are no jobs to be processed.</u>

1778 Access Rights: The requesting user must be an operator or administrator of the Printer object.
 1779 Otherwise, the IPP Printer MUST reject the operation and return: 'client-error-forbidden', 'client-error-
 1780 not-authenticated', or 'client-error-not-authorized' as appropriate.

1781 The Resume-Printer Request and Resume-Printer Response have the same attribute groups and attributes
 1782 as the Pause-Printer operation (see sections 3.2.7.1 and 3.2.7.2).

1783 3.2.9 Purge-Jobs Operation

1784 This OPTIONAL operation allows a client to remove all jobs from an IPP Printer object, regardless of
 1785 their job states, including jobs in the Printer object's Job History (see Section 4.3.7.1). After a Purge-
 1786 Jobs operation has been performed, a Printer object MUST return no jobs in subsequent Get-Job-
 1787 Attributes and Get-Jobs responses (until new jobs are submitted).

1788 Whether the Purge-Jobs (and Get-Jobs) operation affects jobs that were submitted to the device from
 1789 other sources than the IPP Printer object in the same way that the Purge-Jobs operation affects jobs that
 1790 were submitted to the IPP Printer object using IPP, depends on implementation, i.e., on whether the IPP
 1791 protocol is being used as a universal management protocol or just to manage IPP jobs, respectively.

1792 Note: if an operator wants to cancel all jobs without clearing out the Job History, the operator uses the
 1793 Cancel-Job operation on each job instead of using the Purge-Job operation.

1794 The Printer object MUST accept this operation in any state and transition the Printer object to the 'idle'
 1795 state.

1796 Access Rights: The requesting user must be an operator or administrator of the Printer object.
 1797 Otherwise, the IPP object MUST reject the operation and return: client-error-forbidden, client-error-not-
 1798 authenticated, and client-error-not-authorized as appropriate.

1799 The Purge-Jobs Request and Purge-Jobs Response have the same attribute groups and attributes as the
 1800 Pause-Printer operation (see sections 3.2.7.1 and 3.2.7.2).

1801 3.3 Job Operations

1802 All Job operations are directed at Job objects. A client MUST always supply some means of identifying
1803 the Job object in order to identify the correct target of the operation. That job identification MAY either
1804 be a single Job URI or a combination of a Printer URI with a Job ID. The IPP object implementation
1805 MUST support both forms of identification for every job.

1806 3.3.1 Send-Document Operation

1807 This OPTIONAL operation allows a client to create a multi-document Job object that is initially "empty"
1808 (contains no documents). In the Create-Job response, the Printer object returns the Job object's URI (the
1809 "job-uri" attribute) and the Job object's 32-bit identifier (the "job-id" attribute). For each new document
1810 that the client desires to add, the client uses a Send-Document operation. Each Send-Document Request
1811 contains the entire stream of document data for one document.

1812 Since the Create-Job and the send operations (Send-Document or Send-URI operations) that follow
1813 could occur over an arbitrarily long period of time for a particular job, a client MUST send another send
1814 operation within an IPP Printer defined minimum time interval after the receipt of the previous request
1815 for the job. If a Printer object supports multiple document jobs, the Printer object MUST support the
1816 "multiple-operation-time-out" attribute (see section 4.4.28). This attribute indicates the minimum
1817 number of seconds the Printer object will wait for the next send operation before taking some recovery
1818 action.

1819 An IPP object MUST recover from an errant client that does not supply a send operation, sometime after
1820 the minimum time interval specified by the Printer object's "multiple-operation-time-out" attribute. Such
1821 recovery MAY include any of the following or other recovery actions:

- 1822 1. Assume that the Job is an invalid job, start the process of changing the job state to 'aborted', add
1823 the 'aborted-by-system' value to the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute (see section 4.3.8), if
1824 supported, and clean up all resources associated with the Job. In this case, if another send
1825 operation is finally received, the Printer responds with an "client-error-not-possible" or "client-
1826 error-not-found" depending on whether or not the Job object is still around when the send
1827 operation finally arrives.
- 1828 2. Assume that the last send operation received was in fact the last document (as if the "last-
1829 document" flag had been set to 'true'), close the Job object, and proceed to process it (i.e., move
1830 the Job's state to 'pending').
- 1831 3. Assume that the last send operation received was in fact the last document, close the Job, but
1832 move it to the 'pending-held' and add the 'submission-interrupted' value to the job's "job-state-
1833 reasons" attribute (see section 4.3.8), if supported. This action allows the user or an operator to
1834 determine whether to continue processing the Job by moving it back to the 'pending' state [using](#)
1835 [the Release-Job operation \(see section 3.3.6\)](#) or to cancel the job [using the Cancel-Job operation](#)
1836 [\(see section 3.3.3\)](#).

1837
1838 Each implementation is free to decide the "best" action to take depending on local policy, whether any
1839 documents have been added, whether the implementation spools jobs or not, and/or any other piece of

1840 information available to it. If the choice is to abort the Job object, it is possible that the Job object may
1841 already have been processed to the point that some media sheet pages have been printed.

1842 3.3.1.1 Send-Document Request

1843 The following attribute sets are part of the Send-Document Request:

1844 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1845 Natural Language and Character Set:

1846 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1847 3.1.4.1.

1848

1849 Target:

1850 Either (1) the "printer-uri" (uri) plus "job-id" (integer(1:MAX)) or (2) the "job-uri" (uri) operation
1851 attribute(s) which define the target for this operation as described in section 3.1.5.

1852

1853 Requesting User Name:

1854 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) attribute SHOULD be supplied by the client as
1855 described in section 8.3.

1856

1857 "document-name" (name(MAX)):

1858 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1859 attribute. It contains the client supplied document name. The document name MAY be different
1860 than the Job name. It might be helpful, but NEED NOT be unique across multiple documents in
1861 the same Job. Typically, the client software automatically supplies the document name on behalf
1862 of the end user by using a file name or an application generated name. See the description of the
1863 "document-name" operation attribute in the Print-Job Request (section 3.2.1.1) for more
1864 information about this attribute.

1865

1866 "document-format" (mimeMediaType) :

1867 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object MUST support this
1868 attribute. The value of this attribute identifies the format of the supplied document data. If the
1869 client does not supply this attribute, the Printer object assumes that the document data is in the
1870 format defined by the Printer object's "document-format-default" attribute. If the client supplies
1871 this attribute, but the value is not supported by the Printer object, i.e., the value is not one of the
1872 values of the Printer object's "document-format-supported" attribute, the Printer object MUST
1873 reject the request and return the 'client-error-document-format-not-supported' status code.

1874

1875 "document-natural-language" (naturalLanguage):

1876 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The Printer object OPTIONALLY supports
1877 this attribute. This attribute specifies the natural language of the document for those document-
1878 formats that require a specification of the natural language in order to image the document
1879 unambiguously. There are no particular values required for the Printer object to support.

1880

1881 "compression" (type3 keyword)

1882 The client **OPTIONALLY** supplies this attribute. The Printer object **OPTIONALLY** supports
1883 this attribute and the "compression-supported" attribute (see section 4.4.29). The client supplied
1884 "compression" operation attribute identifies the compression algorithm used on the document
1885 data. If the client omits this attribute, the Printer object **MUST** assume that the data is not
1886 compressed. If the client supplies the attribute and the Printer object supports the attribute, the
1887 Printer object **MUST** use the corresponding decompression algorithm on the document data. If
1888 the client supplies this attribute, but the value is not supported by the Printer object, i.e., the value
1889 is not one of the values of the Printer object's "compression-supported" attribute, the Printer
1890 object **MUST** copy the attribute and its value to the Unsupported Attributes response group,
1891 reject the request, and return the 'client-error-attributes-or-values-not-supported' status code.

1892

1893 "last-document" (boolean):

1894 The client **MUST** supply this attribute. The Printer object **MUST** support this attribute. It is a
1895 boolean flag that is set to 'true' if this is the last document for the Job, 'false' otherwise.

1896

1897 Group 2: Document Content

1898 The client **MUST** supply the document data if the "last-document" flag is set to 'false'. However,
1899 since a client might not know that the previous document sent with a Send-Document (or Send-
1900 URI) operation was the last document (i.e., the "last-document" attribute was set to 'false'), it is
1901 legal to send a Send-Document request with no document data where the "last-document" flag is
1902 set to 'true'. Such a request **MUST NOT** increment the value of the Job object's "number-of-
1903 documents" attribute, since no real document was added to the job.

1904 3.3.1.2 Send-Document Response

1905 The following sets of attributes are part of the Send-Document Response:

1906 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1907 Status Message:

1908 In addition to the **REQUIRED** status code returned in every response, the response
1909 **OPTIONALLY** includes a "status-message" (text) operation attribute as described in sections 14
1910 and 3.1.6.

1911

1912 Natural Language and Character Set:

1913 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1914 3.1.4.2.

1915

1916 Group 2: Unsupported Attributes

1917 This is a set of Operation attributes supplied by the client (in the request) that are not supported
1918 by the Printer object or that conflict with one another (see sections 3.2.1.2 and the Implementer's
1919 Guide [IPP-IIG]). If the Printer object is not returning any Unsupported Attributes in the
1920 response, the Printer object **SHOULD** omit Group 2 rather than sending an empty group.
1921 However, a client **MUST** be able to accept an empty group.

1922

1923 Group 3: Job Object Attributes

1924 This is the same set of attributes as described in the Print-Job response (see section 3.2.1.2).

1925

1926 3.3.2 Send-URI Operation

1927 This OPTIONAL operation is identical to the Send-Document operation (see section 3.3.1) except that a
1928 client MUST supply a URI reference ("document-uri" operation attribute) rather than the document data
1929 itself. If a Printer object supports this operation, clients can use both Send-URI or Send-Document
1930 operations to add new documents to an existing multi-document Job object. However, if a client needs
1931 to indicate that the previous Send-URI or Send-Document was the last document, the client MUST use
1932 the Send-Document operation with no document data and the "last-document" flag set to 'true' (rather
1933 than using a Send-URI operation with no "document-uri" operation attribute).

1934 If a Printer object supports this operation, it MUST also support the Print-URI operation (see section
1935 3.2.2).

1936 The Printer object MUST validate the syntax and URI scheme of the supplied URI before returning a
1937 response, just as in the Print-URI operation.

1938 3.3.3 Cancel-Job Operation

1939 This REQUIRED operation allows a client to cancel a Print Job from the time the job is created up to the
1940 time it is completed, canceled, or aborted. Since a Job might already be printing by the time a Cancel-
1941 Job is received, some media sheet pages might be printed before the job is actually terminated.

1942 3.3.3.1 Cancel-Job Request

1943 The following groups of attributes are part of the Cancel-Job Request:

1944 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1945 Natural Language and Character Set:

1946 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1947 3.1.4.1.

1948

1949 Target:

1950 Either (1) the "printer-uri" (uri) plus "job-id" (integer(1:MAX)) or (2) the "job-uri" (uri)
1951 operation attribute(s) which define the target for this operation as described in section 3.1.5.

1952

1953 Requesting User Name:

1954 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) attribute SHOULD be supplied by the client as
1955 described in section 8.3.

1956

1957 "message" (text(127)):

1958 The client **OPTIONALLY** supplies this attribute. The Printer object **OPTIONALLY** supports
1959 this attribute. It is a message to the operator. This "message" attribute is not the same as the "job-
1960 message-from-operator" attribute. That attribute is used to report a message from the operator to
1961 the end user that queries that attribute. This "message" operation attribute is used to send a
1962 message from the client to the operator along with the operation request. It is an implementation
1963 decision of how or where to display this message to the operator (if at all).
1964

1965 3.3.3.2 Cancel-Job Response

1966 The following sets of attributes are part of the Cancel-Job Response:

1967 Group 1: Operation Attributes

1968 Status Message:

1969 In addition to the **REQUIRED** status code returned in every response, the response
1970 **OPTIONALLY** includes a "status-message" (text) operation attribute as described in sections 14
1971 and 3.1.6.

1972
1973 If the job is already in the 'completed', 'aborted', or 'canceled' state, or the 'process-to-stop-point'
1974 value is set in the Job's "job-state-reasons" attribute, the Printer object **MUST** reject the request
1975 and return the 'client-error-not-possible' error status code.
1976

1977 Natural Language and Character Set:

1978 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
1979 3.1.4.2.
1980

1981 Group 2: Unsupported Attributes

1982 This is a set of Operation attributes supplied by the client (in the request) that are not supported
1983 by the Printer object or that conflict with one another (see section 3.2.1.2 and the Implementer's
1984 Guide [IPP-IIG]). If the Printer object is not returning any Unsupported Attributes in the
1985 response, the Printer object **SHOULD** omit Group 2 rather than sending an empty group.
1986 However, a client **MUST** be able to accept an empty group.
1987

1988 Once a successful response has been sent, the implementation guarantees that the Job will eventually end
1989 up in the 'canceled' state. Between the time of the Cancel-Job operation is accepted and when the job
1990 enters the 'canceled' job-state (see section 4.3.7), the "job-state-reasons" attribute **SHOULD** contain the '
1991 processing-to-stop-point' value which indicates to later queries that although the Job might still be
1992 'processing', it will eventually end up in the 'canceled' state, not the 'completed' state.

1993 3.3.4 Get-Job-Attributes Operation

1994 This REQUIRED operation allows a client to request the values of attributes of a Job object and it is
1995 almost identical to the Get-Printer-Attributes operation (see section 3.2.5). The only differences are that
1996 the operation is directed at a Job object rather than a Printer object, there is no "document-format"
1997 operation attribute used when querying a Job object, and the returned attribute group is a set of Job
1998 object attributes rather than a set of Printer object attributes.

1999 For Jobs, the possible names of attribute groups are:

- 2000 - 'job-template': all of the Job Template attributes that apply to a Job object (the first column of the
2001 table in Section 4.2).
 - 2002 - 'job-description': all of the Job Description attributes specified in Section 4.3.
 - 2003 - 'all': the special group 'all' that includes all supported attributes.
- 2004

2005 Since a client MAY request specific attributes or named groups, there is a potential that there is some
2006 overlap. For example, if a client requests, 'job-name' and 'job-description', the client is actually
2007 requesting the "job-name" attribute once by naming it explicitly, and once by inclusion in the 'job-
2008 description' group. In such cases, the Printer object NEED NOT return the attribute only once in the
2009 response even if it is requested multiple times. The client SHOULD NOT request the same attribute in
2010 multiple ways.

2011 It is NOT REQUIRED that a Job object support all attributes belonging to a group (since some attributes
2012 are OPTIONAL). However it is REQUIRED that each Job object support all group names.

2013 3.3.4.1 Get-Job-Attributes Request

2014 The following groups of attributes are part of the Get-Job-Attributes Request when the request is
2015 directed at a Job object:

2016 Group 1: Operation Attributes

2017 Natural Language and Character Set:

2018 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
2019 3.1.4.1.

2020

2021 Target:

2022 Either (1) the "printer-uri" (uri) plus "job-id" (integer(1:MAX)) or (2) the "job-uri" (uri)
2023 operation attribute(s) which define the target for this operation as described in section 3.1.5.

2024

2025 Requesting User Name:

2026 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) attribute SHOULD be supplied by the client as
2027 described in section 8.3.

2028

2029 "requested-attributes" (1setOf keyword) :

2030 The client **OPTIONALLY** supplies this attribute. The IPP object **MUST** support this attribute.
2031 It is a set of attribute names and/or attribute group names in whose values the requester is
2032 interested. If the client omits this attribute, the IPP object **MUST** respond as if this attribute had
2033 been supplied with a value of 'all'.
2034

2035 3.3.4.2 Get-Job-Attributes Response

2036 The Printer object returns the following sets of attributes as part of the Get-Job-Attributes Response:

2037 Group 1: Operation Attributes

2038 Status Message:

2039 In addition to the **REQUIRED** status code returned in every response, the response
2040 **OPTIONALLY** includes a "status-message" (text) operation attribute as described in sections 14
2041 and 3.1.6.
2042

2043 Natural Language and Character Set:

2044 The "attributes-charset" and "attributes-natural-language" attributes as described in section
2045 3.1.4.2. The "attributes-natural-language" **MAY** be the natural language of the Job object, rather
2046 than the one requested.
2047

2048 Group 2: Unsupported Attributes

2049 This is a set of Operation attributes supplied by the client (in the request) that are not supported
2050 by the Printer object or that conflict with one another (see sections 3.2.1.2 and the Implementer's
2051 Guide [IPP-IIG]). The response **NEED NOT** contain the "requested-attributes" operation
2052 attribute with any supplied values (attribute keywords) that were requested by the client but are
2053 not supported by the IPP object. If the Printer object is not returning any Unsupported Attributes
2054 in the response, the Printer object **SHOULD** omit Group 2 rather than sending an empty group.
2055 However, a client **MUST** be able to accept an empty group.
2056

2057 Group 3: Job Object Attributes

2058 This is the set of requested attributes and their current values. The IPP object ignores (does not
2059 respond with) any requested attribute or value which is not supported or which is restricted by the
2060 security policy in force, including whether the requesting user is the user that submitted the job
2061 (job originating user) or not (see section 8). However, the IPP object **MUST** respond with the
2062 'unknown' value for any supported attribute (including all **REQUIRED** attributes) for which the
2063 IPP object does not know the value, unless it would violate the security policy. See the
2064 description of the "out-of-band" values in the beginning of Section 4.1.

2065 3.3.5 Hold-Job Operation

2066 This OPTIONAL operation allows a client to hold a pending job in the queue so that it is not eligible for
 2067 scheduling. If the Hold-Job operation is supported, then the Release-Job operation MUST be supported,
 2068 and vice-versa. The OPTIONAL "job-hold-until" operation attribute allows a client to specify whether
 2069 to hold the job indefinitely or until a specified time period, if supported.

2070 The IPP object MUST accept or reject the request based on the job's current state and transition the job
 2071 to the indicated new state as follows:

<u>Current "job-state"</u>	<u>New "job-state"</u>	<u>IPP object's response status code and action:</u>
<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' See Note 1</u>
<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' See Note 2</u>
<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' See Note 1</u>
<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' See Note 2</u>
<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'</u>
<u>'processing-stopped'</u>	<u>'processing-stopped'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'</u>
<u>'completed'</u>	<u>'completed'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'</u>
<u>'canceled'</u>	<u>'canceled'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'</u>
<u>'aborted'</u>	<u>'aborted'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'</u>

2072 Note 1: If the OPTIONAL "job-state-reasons" attribute is supported and if the implementation supports
 2073 multiple reasons for a job to be in the 'pending-held' state, the IPP object MUST add the 'job-hold-until-
 2074 specified' value to the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute.

2075 Note 2: If the IPP object supports the "job-hold-until" operation attribute, but the specified time period
 2076 has already started (or is the 'no-hold' value) and there are no other reasons to hold the job, the IPP object
 2077 MUST make the job be a candidate for processing immediately (see Section 4.2.2) by putting the job in
 2078 the 'pending' state.

2079 Note: In order to keep the Hold-Job operation simple, such a request is rejected when the job is in the
 2080 'processing' or 'processing-stopped' states. If an operation is needed to hold jobs while in these states, it
 2081 will be added as an additional operation, rather than overloading the Hold-Job operation. Then it is clear
 2082 to clients by querying the Printer object's "operations-supported" (see Section 4.4.13) and the Job
 2083 object's "job-state" (see Section 4.3.7) attributes which operations are possible.

2084 Access Rights: The requesting user must either be the submitter of the job or an operator or administrator
 2085 of the Printer object (see Section 1). Otherwise, the IPP object MUST reject the operation and return:
 2086 'client-error-forbidden', 'client-error-not-authenticated', or 'client-error-not-authorized' as appropriate.

2087 3.3.5.1 Hold-Job Request

2088 The groups and operation attributes are the same as for a Cancel-Job request (see section 3.3.3.1), with
 2089 the addition of the following Group 1 Operation attribute:

2090 "job-hold-until" (type3 keyword | name(MAX)):

2091 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this Operation attribute. The IPP object MUST support this
2092 operation attribute in a Hold-Job request, if it supports the "job-hold-until" Job template attribute
2093 in create operations. See section 4.2.2. The IPP object SHOULD support the "job-hold-until"
2094 Job Template attribute for use in job create operations with at least the 'indefinite' value, if it
2095 supports the Hold-Job operation. Otherwise, a client cannot create a job and hold it immediately
2096 (without picking some supported time period in the future).

2097 If supplied and supported as specified in the Printer's "job-hold-until-supported" attribute, the IPP
2098 object copies the supplied operation attribute to the Job object, replacing the job's previous "job-
2099 hold-until" attribute, if present, and makes the job a candidate for scheduling during the supplied
2100 named time period.

2101 If supplied, but either the "job-hold-until" Operation attribute itself or the value supplied is not
2102 supported, the IPP object accepts the request, returns the unsupported attribute or value in the
2103 Unsupported Attributes Group according to section 3.2.1.2, returns the 'successful-ok-ignored-or-
2104 substituted-attributes, and holds the job indefinitely until a client performs a subsequent Release-
2105 Job operation.

2106 If the client (1) supplies a value that specifies a time period that has already started or the 'no-
2107 hold' value (meaning don't hold the job) and (2) the IPP object supports the "job-hold-until"
2108 operation attribute and there are no other reasons to hold the job, the IPP object MUST accept the
2109 operation and make the job be a candidate for processing immediately (see Section 4.2.2).

2110 If the client does not supply a "job-hold-until" Operation attribute in the request, the IPP object
2111 MUST populate the job object with a "job-hold-until" attribute with the 'indefinite' value (if IPP
2112 object supports the "job-hold-until" attribute) and hold the job indefinitely, until a client performs
2113 a Release-Job operation.

2114 3.3.5.2 Hold-Job Response

2115 The groups and attributes are the same as for a Cancel-Job response (see section 3.3.3.2).

2116 3.3.6 Release-Job Operation

2117 This OPTIONAL operation allows a client to release a previously held job so that it is again eligible for
2118 scheduling. If the Hold-Job operation is supported, then the Release-Job operation MUST be supported,
2119 and vice-versa.

2120 This operation removes the "job-hold-until" job attribute, if present, from the job object that had been
2121 supplied in the create or most recent Hold-Job or Restart-Job operation and remove its effect on the job.
2122 If the OPTIONAL "job-state-reasons" attribute is supported, the IPP object MUST remove the 'job-hold-
2123 until-specified' value from the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute, if present. See section 4.3.8.

2124 The IPP object MUST accept or reject the request based on the job's current state and transition the job
2125 to the indicated new state as follows:

<u>Current "job-state"</u>	<u>New "job-state"</u>	<u>IPP object's response status code and action:</u>
<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' No effect on the job.</u>
<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' See Note 1</u>
<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'successful-ok'</u>
<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' No effect on the job.</u>
<u>'processing-stopped'</u>	<u>'processing-stopped'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' No effect on the job.</u>
<u>'completed'</u>	<u>'completed'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'</u>
<u>'canceled'</u>	<u>'canceled'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'</u>
<u>'aborted'</u>	<u>'aborted'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'</u>

2126 Note 1: If there are other reasons to keep the job in the 'pending-held' state, such as 'resources-are-not-
 2127 ready', the job remains in the 'pending-held' state. Thus the 'pending-held' state is not just for jobs that
 2128 have the 'job-hold-until' applied to them, but are for any reason to keep the job from being a candidate
 2129 for scheduling and processing, such as 'resources-are-not-ready'. See the "job-hold-until" attribute
 2130 (section 4.2.2).

2131 Access Rights: The requesting user must either be the submitter of the job or an operator or administrator
 2132 of the Printer object. Otherwise, the IPP object MUST reject the operation and return: 'client-error-
 2133 forbidden', 'client-error-not-authenticated', or 'client-error-not-authorized' as appropriate.

2134 The Release-Job Request and Release-Job Response have the same attribute groups and attributes as the
 2135 Cancel-Job operation (see section 3.3.3.1 and 3.3.3.2).

2136 3.3.7 Restart-Job Operation

2137 This OPTIONAL operation allows a client to restart a job that is retained in the queue after processing
 2138 has completed (see section 4.3.7.1). ~~As an implementation option, a job in the 'processing' and/or~~
 2139 ~~'processing-stopped' states MAY be restarted.~~

2140 The job is moved to the 'pending' job state and restarts at the beginning on the same IPP Printer object
 2141 with the same attribute values. The Job Description attributes that accumulate job progress, such as
 2142 "job-impressions-completed", "job-media-sheets-completed", and "job-k-octets-processed", MUST be
 2143 reset to 0 so that they give an accurate record of the job from its restart point. The job object MUST
 2144 continue to use the same "job-uri" and "job-id" attribute values.

2145 Note: If in the future an operation is needed that does not reset the job progress attributes, then a new
 2146 operation will be defined which makes a copy of the job, assigns a new "job-uri" and "job-id" to the copy
 2147 and resets the job progress attributes in the new copy only.

2148 The IPP object MUST accept or reject the request based on the job's current state, transition the job (~~or~~
 2149 ~~new job, depending on implementation) to the indicated new state as follows:~~

<u>Current "job-state"</u>	<u>New "job-state"</u>	<u>IPP object's response status code and action:</u>
<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'.</u>
<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'pending-held'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible'.</u>

<u>Current "job-state"</u>	<u>New "job-state"</u>	<u>IPP object's response status code and action:</u>
<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>OPTION 1: 'successful-ok' - job is started over. See Note 1.</u>
<u>'processing'</u>	<u>'processing'</u>	<u>OPTION 2: 'client-error-not-possible'.</u>
<u>'processing-stopped'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>OPTION 1: 'successful-ok' - job is started over. See Note 1</u>
<u>'processing-stopped'</u>		<u>OPTION 2:</u>
<u>'completed'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' - job is started over.</u>
<u>'completed'</u>	<u>'completed'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible' - see Note 1</u>
<u>'canceled'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' - job is started over.</u>
<u>'canceled'</u>	<u>'canceled'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible' - see Note 1</u>
<u>'aborted'</u>	<u>'pending'</u>	<u>'successful-ok' - job is started over.</u>
<u>'aborted'</u>	<u>'aborted'</u>	<u>'client-error-not-possible' - see Note 1</u>

2150

2151 Note 1: If the Job Retention Period has expired for the job in this state, then the IPP object rejects the
 2152 operation. See section 4.3.7.1.

2153 Note: In order to prevent a user from inadvertently restarting a job in the middle, the Restart-Job request
 2154 is rejected when the job is in the 'processing' or 'processing-stopped' states. If in the future an operation
 2155 is needed to hold or restart jobs while in these states, it will be added as an additional operation, rather
 2156 than overloading the Restart-Job operation, so that it is clear that the user intended that the current job
 2157 not be completed.

2158 Access Rights: The requesting user must either be the submitter of the job or an operator or administrator
 2159 of the Printer object. Otherwise, the IPP object MUST reject the operation and return: 'client-error-
 2160 forbidden', 'client-error-not-authenticated', or 'client-error-not-authorized' as appropriate.

2161 3.3.7.1 Restart-Job Request

2162 The groups and attributes are the same as for a Cancel-Job request (see section 3.3.3.1), with the addition
 2163 of the following Group 1 Operation attribute:

2164 "job-hold-until" (type3 keyword | name(MAX)):

2165 The client OPTIONALLY supplies this attribute. The IPP object MUST support this Operation
 2166 attribute in a Restart-Job request, if it supports the "job-hold-until" Job Template attribute in
 2167 create operations. See section 4.2.2. Otherwise, the IPP object NEED NOT support the "job-
 2168 hold-until" Operation attribute in a Restart-Job request.

2169 If supplied and supported as specified in the Printer's "job-hold-until-supported" attribute, the IPP
 2170 object copies the supplied Operation attribute to the Job object, replacing the job's previous "job-
 2171 hold-until" attribute, if present, and makes the job a candidate for scheduling during the supplied
 2172 named time period. See section 4.2.2.

2173 If supplied, but the value is not supported, the IPP object accepts the request, returns the
2174 unsupported attribute or value in the Unsupported Attributes Group according to section 3.2.1.2,
2175 returns the 'successful-ok-ignored-or-substituted-attributes' status code, and holds the job
2176 indefinitely until a client performs a subsequent Release-Job operation.

2177 If supplied, but the "job-hold-until" Operation attribute itself is not supported, the IPP object
2178 accepts the request, returns the unsupported attribute with the out-of-band 'unsupported' value in
2179 the Unsupported Attributes Group according to section 3.2.1.2, returns the 'successful-ok-
2180 ignored-or-substituted-attributes' status code, and restarts the job, i.e., ignores the "job-hold-
2181 until" attribute.

2182 ~~See Section 3.3.5.1 for the common semantics of the "job-hold-until" operation attribute for the~~
2183 ~~Hold-Job operation and Restart-Job operation.~~

2184 If the client (1) supplies a value that specifies a time period that has already started or the 'no-
2185 hold' value (meaning don't hold the job) and (2) the IPP object supports the "job-hold-until"
2186 operation attribute and there are no other reasons to hold the job, the IPP object makes the job a
2187 candidate for processing immediately (see Section 4.2.2).

2188 If the client does not supply a "job-hold-until" operation attribute in the request, the IPP object
2189 removes the "job-hold-until" attribute, if present, from the job. If there are no other reasons to
2190 hold the job, the Restart-Job operation makes the job a candidate for processing immediately (see
2191 Section 4.2.2).

2192 3.3.7.2 Restart-Job Response

2193 The groups and attributes are the same as for a Cancel-Job response (see section 3.3.3.2).

2194 Note: In the future an OPTIONAL Modify-Job operation may be specified that allows the client to
2195 modify other attributes before releasing the restarted job.

2196 4. Object Attributes

2197 This section describes the attributes with their corresponding attribute syntaxes and values that are part
2198 of the IPP model. The sections below show the objects and their associated attributes which are
2199 included within the scope of this protocol. Many of these attributes are derived from other relevant
2200 specifications:

2201 - Document Printing Application (DPA) [ISO10175]

2202 - RFC 1759 Printer MIB [RFC1759]

2203

2204 Each attribute is uniquely identified in this document using a "keyword" (see section 13.2.1) which is the
2205 name of the attribute. The keyword is included in the section header describing that attribute.

2206 Note: Not only are keywords used to identify attributes, but one of the attribute syntaxes described
2207 below is "keyword" so that some attributes have keyword values. Therefore, these attributes are defined
2208 as having an attribute syntax that is a set of keywords.

2209 4.1 Attribute Syntaxes

2210 This section defines the basic attribute syntax types that all clients and IPP objects MUST be able to
2211 accept in responses and accept in requests, respectively. Each attribute description in sections 3 and
2212 3.3.5 includes the name of attribute syntax(es) in the heading (in parentheses). A conforming
2213 implementation of an attribute MUST include the semantics of the attribute syntax(es) so identified.
2214 Section 6.3 describes how the protocol can be extended with new attribute syntaxes.

2215 The attribute syntaxes are specified in the following sub-sections, where the sub-section heading is the
2216 keyword name of the attribute syntax inside the single quotes. In operation requests and responses each
2217 attribute value MUST be represented as one of the attribute syntaxes specified in the sub-section heading
2218 for the attribute. In addition, the value of an attribute in a response (but not in a request) MAY be one of
2219 the "out-of-band" values. Standard "out-of-band" values are:

2220 `unknown`: The attribute is supported by the IPP object, but the value is unknown to the IPP object
2221 for some reason.

2222 `unsupported`: The attribute is unsupported by the IPP object. This value MUST be returned only as
2223 the value of an attribute in the Unsupported Attributes Group.

2224 `no-value`: The attribute is supported by the Printer object, but the ~~system~~ administrator has not yet
2225 configured a value.

2226

2227 The "Encoding and Transport" specification [IPP-PRO] defines mechanisms for passing "out-of-band"
2228 values. All attributes in a request MUST have one or more values as defined in Sections 4.2 to 4.4.
2229 Thus clients MUST NOT supply attributes with "out-of-band" values. All attributes in a response
2230 MUST have one or more values as defined in Sections 4.2 to 4.4 or a single "out-of-band" value.

2231 Most attributes are defined to have a single attribute syntax. However, a few attributes (e.g., "job-sheet",
2232 "media", "job-hold-until") are defined to have several attribute syntaxes, depending on the value. These
2233 multiple attribute syntaxes are separated by the "|" character in the sub-section heading to indicate the
2234 choice. Since each value MUST be tagged as to its attribute syntax in the protocol, a single-valued
2235 attribute instance may have any one of its attribute syntaxes and a multi-valued attribute instance may
2236 have a mixture of its defined attribute syntaxes.

2237 4.1.1 `text`

2238 A text attribute is an attribute whose value is a sequence of zero or more characters encoded in a
2239 maximum of 1023 (MAX) octets. MAX is the maximum length for each value of any text attribute.
2240 However, if an attribute will always contain values whose maximum length is much less than MAX, the
2241 definition of that attribute will include a qualifier that defines the maximum length for values of that
2242 attribute. For example: the "printer-location" attribute is specified as "printer-location (text(127))". In

2243 this case, text values for "printer-location" MUST NOT exceed 127 octets; if supplied with a longer text
2244 string via some external interface (other than the protocol), implementations are free to truncate to this
2245 shorter length limitation.

2246 In this specification, all text attributes are defined using the 'text' syntax. However, 'text' is used only for
2247 brevity; the formal interpretation of 'text' is: 'textWithoutLanguage | textWithLanguage'. That is, for any
2248 attribute defined in this specification using the 'text' attribute syntax, all IPP objects and clients MUST
2249 support both the 'textWithoutLanguage' and 'textWithLanguage' attribute syntaxes. However, in actual
2250 usage and protocol execution, objects and clients accept and return only one of the two syntax per
2251 attribute. The syntax 'text' never appears "on-the-wire".

2252 Both 'textWithoutLanguage' and 'textWithLanguage' are needed to support the real world needs of
2253 interoperability between sites and systems that use different natural languages as the basis for human
2254 communication. Generally, one natural language applies to all text attributes in a given request or
2255 response. The language is indicated by the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute defined in
2256 section 3.1.4 or "attributes-natural-language" job attribute defined in section 4.3.24, and there is no need
2257 to identify the natural language for each text string on a value-by-value basis. In these cases, the
2258 attribute syntax 'textWithoutLanguage' is used for text attributes. In other cases, the client needs to
2259 supply or the Printer object needs to return a text value in a natural language that is different from the
2260 rest of the text values in the request or response. In these cases, the client or Printer object uses the
2261 attribute syntax 'textWithLanguage' for text attributes (this is the Natural Language Override mechanism
2262 described in section 3.1.4).

2263 The 'textWithoutLanguage' and 'textWithLanguage' attribute syntaxes are described in more detail in the
2264 following sections.

2265 4.1.1.1 'textWithoutLanguage'

2266 The 'textWithoutLanguage' syntax indicates a value that is sequence of zero or more characters. Text
2267 strings are encoded using the rules of some charset. The Printer object MUST support the UTF-8
2268 charset [RFC2044~~2279~~] and MAY support additional charsets to represent 'text' values, provided that the
2269 charsets are registered with IANA [IANA-CS]. See Section 4.1.7 for the specification of the 'charset'
2270 attribute syntax, including restricted semantics and examples of charsets.

2271 4.1.1.2 'textWithLanguage'

2272 The 'textWithLanguage' attribute syntax is a compound attribute syntax consisting of two parts: a
2273 'textWithoutLanguage' part plus an additional 'naturalLanguage' (see section 4.1.8) part that overrides the
2274 natural language in force. The 'naturalLanguage' part explicitly identifies the natural language that
2275 applies to the text part of that value and that value alone. For any give text attribute, the
2276 'textWithoutLanguage' part is limited to the maximum length defined for that attribute, but the
2277 'naturalLanguage' part is always limited to 63 octets. Using the 'textWithLanguage' attribute syntax rather
2278 than the normal 'textWithoutLanguage' syntax is the so-called Natural Language Override mechanism
2279 and MUST be supported by all IPP objects and clients.

2280 If the attribute is multi-valued (1setOf text), then the 'textWithLanguage' attribute syntax MUST be used
2281 to explicitly specify each attribute value whose natural language needs to be overridden. Other values in
2282 a multi-valued 'text' attribute in a request or a response revert to the natural language of the operation
2283 attribute.

2284 In a create request, the Printer object MUST accept and store with the Job object any natural language in
2285 the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute, whether the Printer object supports that natural
2286 language or not. Furthermore, the Printer object MUST accept and store any 'textWithLanguage'
2287 attribute value, whether the Printer object supports that natural language or not. These requirements are
2288 independent of the value of the "ipp-attribute-fidelity" operation attribute that the client MAY supply.

2289 Example: If the client supplies the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute with the value: 'en'
2290 indicating English, but the value of the "job-name" attribute is in French, the client MUST use the
2291 'textWithLanguage' attribute syntax with the following two values:

2292 'fr': Natural Language Override indicating French

2293 'Rapport Mensuel': the job name in French

2294

2295 See the "[Encoding and Transport](#)" document [IPP-PRO] for a detailed example of the
2296 'textWithLanguage' attribute syntax.

2297 4.1.2 'name'

2298 This syntax type is used for user-friendly strings, such as a Printer name, that, for humans, are more
2299 meaningful than identifiers. Names are never translated from one natural language to another. The
2300 'name' attribute syntax is essentially the same as 'text', including the REQUIRED support of UTF-8
2301 except that the sequence of characters is limited so that its encoded form MUST NOT exceed 255
2302 (MAX) octets.

2303 Also like 'text', 'name' is really an abbreviated notation for either 'nameWithoutLanguage' or
2304 'nameWithLanguage'. That is, all IPP objects and clients MUST support both the
2305 'nameWithoutLanguage' and 'nameWithLanguage' attribute syntaxes. However, in actual usage and
2306 protocol execution, objects and clients accept and return only one of the two syntax per attribute. The
2307 syntax 'name' never appears "on-the-wire".

2308 Note: Only the 'text' and 'name' attribute syntaxes permit the Natural Language Override mechanism.

2309 Some attributes are defined as 'type3 keyword | name'. These attributes support values that are either
2310 type3 keywords or names. This dual-syntax mechanism enables a site administrator to extend these
2311 attributes to legally include values that are locally defined by the site administrator. Such names are not
2312 registered with IANA.

2313 4.1.2.1 'nameWithoutLanguage'

2314 The nameWithoutLanguage' syntax indicates a value that is sequence of zero or more characters so that
2315 its encoded form does not exceed MAX octets.

2316 4.1.2.2 'nameWithLanguage'

2317 The 'nameWithLanguage' attribute syntax is a compound attribute syntax consisting of two parts: a
2318 'nameWithoutLanguage' part plus an additional 'naturalLanguage' (see section 4.1.8) part that overrides
2319 the natural language in force. The 'naturalLanguage' part explicitly identifies the natural language that
2320 applies to that name value and that name value alone.

2321 The 'nameWithLanguage' attribute syntax behaves the same as the 'textWithLanguage' syntax. If a name
2322 is in a language that is different than the rest of the object or operation, then this 'nameWithLanguage'
2323 syntax is used rather than the generic 'nameWithoutLanguage' syntax.

2324 Example: If the client supplies the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute with the value: 'en'
2325 indicating English, but the "printer-name" attribute is in German, the client **MUST** use the
2326 'nameWithLanguage' attribute syntax as follows:

2327 'de': Natural Language Override indicating German

2328 'Farbdrucker': the Printer name in German

2329

2330 4.1.2.3 Matching 'name' attribute values

2331 For purposes of matching two 'name' attribute values for equality, such as in job validation (where a
2332 client-supplied value for attribute "xxx" is checked to see if the value is among the values of the Printer
2333 object's corresponding "xxx-supported" attribute), the following match rules apply:

2334 1. 'keyword' values never match 'name' values.

2335 2. 'name' (nameWithoutLanguage and nameWithLanguage) values match if (1) the name parts
2336 match and (2) the Associated Natural-Language parts (see section 3.1.4.1) match. The matching
2337 rules are:

2338 a. the name parts match if the two names are identical character by character, except it is
2339 RECOMMENDED that case be ignored. For example: 'Ajax-letter-head-white' **MUST**
2340 match 'Ajax-letter-head-white' and **SHOULD** match 'ajax-letter-head-white' and 'AJAX-
2341 LETTER-HEAD-WHITE'.

2342 b. the Associated Natural-Language parts match if the shorter of the two meets the
2343 syntactic requirements of RFC 1766 [RFC1766] and matches byte for byte with the
2344 longer. For example, 'en' matches 'en', 'en-us' and 'en-gb', but matches neither 'fr' nor 'e'.

2345 4.1.3 'keyword'

2346 The 'keyword' attribute syntax is a sequence of characters, length: 1 to 255, containing only the US-
2347 ASCII [ASCII] encoded values for lowercase letters ("a" - "z"), digits ("0" - "9"), hyphen ("-"), dot ("."),
2348 and underscore ("_"). The first character **MUST** be a lowercase letter. Furthermore, keywords **MUST**
2349 be in U.S. English.

2350 This syntax type is used for enumerating semantic identifiers of entities in the abstract protocol, i.e.,
2351 entities identified in this document. Keywords are used as attribute names or values of attributes.
2352 Unlike 'text' and 'name' attribute values, 'keyword' values MUST NOT use the Natural Language
2353 Override mechanism, since they MUST always be US-ASCII and U.S. English.

2354 Keywords are for use in the protocol. A user interface will likely provide a mapping between protocol
2355 keywords and displayable user-friendly words and phrases which are localized to the natural language of
2356 the user. While the keywords specified in this document MAY be displayed to users whose natural
2357 language is U.S. English, they MAY be mapped to other U.S. English words for U.S. English users,
2358 since the user interface is outside the scope of this document.

2359 In the definition for each attribute of this syntax type, the full set of defined keyword values for that
2360 attribute are listed.

2361 When a keyword is used to represent an attribute (its name), it MUST be unique within the full scope of
2362 all IPP objects and attributes. When a keyword is used to represent a value of an attribute, it MUST be
2363 unique just within the scope of that attribute. That is, the same keyword MUST NOT be used for two
2364 different values within the same attribute to mean two different semantic ideas. However, the same
2365 keyword MAY be used across two or more attributes, representing different semantic ideas for each
2366 attribute. Section 6.1 describes how the protocol can be extended with new keyword values. Examples
2367 of attribute name keywords:

2368 "job-name"
2369 "attributes-charset"
2370

2371 Note: This document uses "type1", "type2", and "type3" prefixes to the "keyword" basic syntax to
2372 indicate different levels of review for extensions (see section 6.1).

2373 4.1.4 'enum'

2374 The 'enum' attribute syntax is an enumerated integer value that is in the range from 1 to $2^{31} - 1$
2375 (MAX). Each value has an associated 'keyword' name. In the definition for each attribute of this syntax
2376 type, the full set of possible values for that attribute are listed. This syntax type is used for attributes for
2377 which there are enum values assigned by other standards, such as SNMP MIBs. A number of attribute
2378 enum values in this specification are also used for corresponding attributes in other standards
2379 [RFC1759]. This syntax type is not used for attributes to which the [system](#)-administrator may assign
2380 values. Section 6.1 describes how the protocol can be extended with new enum values.

2381 Enum values are for use in the protocol. A user interface will provide a mapping between protocol enum
2382 values and displayable user-friendly words and phrases which are localized to the natural language of the
2383 user. While the enum symbols specified in this document MAY be displayed to users whose natural
2384 language is U.S. English, they MAY be mapped to other U.S. English words for U.S. English users,
2385 since the user interface is outside the scope of this document.

2386 Note: SNMP MIBs use '2' for 'unknown' which corresponds to the IPP "out-of-band" value 'unknown'.
2387 See the description of the "out-of-band" values at the beginning of Section 4.1. Therefore, attributes of
2388 type 'enum' start at '3'.

2389 Note: This document uses "type1", "type2", and "type3" prefixes to the "enum" basic syntax to indicate
2390 different levels of review for extensions (see section 6.1).

2391 4.1.5 'uri'

2392 The 'uri' attribute syntax is any valid Uniform Resource Identifier or URI [RFC2396]. Most often, URIs
2393 are simply Uniform Resource Locators or URLs. The maximum length of URIs used as values of IPP
2394 attributes is 1023 octets. Although most other IPP attribute syntax types allow for only lower-cased
2395 values, this attribute syntax type conforms to the case-sensitive and case-insensitive rules specified in
2396 [RFC2396]. [See also \[IPP-IIG\] for a discussion of case in URIs.](#)

2397 4.1.6 'uriScheme'

2398 The 'uriScheme' attribute syntax is a sequence of characters representing a URI scheme according to
2399 RFC 2396 [RFC2396]. Though RFC 2396 requires that the values be case-insensitive, IPP requires all
2400 lower case values in IPP attributes to simplify comparing by IPP clients and Printer objects. Standard
2401 values for this syntax type are the following keywords:

2402 'http': for HTTP schemed URIs (e.g., "http:...")
2403 'https': for use with HTTPS schemed URIs (e.g., "https:...") (not on IETF standards track)
2404 'ftp': for FTP schemed URIs (e.g., "ftp:...")
2405 'mailto': for SMTP schemed URIs (e.g., "mailto:...")
2406 'file': for file schemed URIs (e.g., "file:...")
2407

2408 A Printer object MAY support any URI 'scheme' that has been registered with IANA [IANA-MT]. The
2409 maximum length of URI 'scheme' values used to represent IPP attribute values is 63 octets.

2410 4.1.7 'charset'

2411 The 'charset' attribute syntax is a standard identifier for a charset. A charset is a coded character set and
2412 encoding scheme. Charsets are used for labeling certain document contents and 'text' and 'name'
2413 attribute values. The syntax and semantics of this attribute syntax are specified in RFC 2046 [RFC2046]
2414 and contained in the IANA character-set Registry [IANA-CS] according to the IANA procedures
2415 [RFC2278]. Though RFC 2046 requires that the values be case-insensitive US-ASCII, IPP requires all
2416 lower case values in IPP attributes to simplify comparing by IPP clients and Printer objects. When a
2417 character-set in the IANA registry has more than one name (alias), the name labeled as "(preferred
2418 MIME name)", if present, MUST be used.

2419 The maximum length of 'charset' values used to represent IPP attribute values is 63 octets.

2420 Some examples are:

2421 'utf-8': ISO 10646 Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS) represented as the UTF-8
2422 [RFC2279] transfer encoding scheme in which US-ASCII is a subset charset.
2423 'us-ascii': 7-bit American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII), ANSI X3.4-1986
2424 [ASCII]. That standard defines US-ASCII, but RFC 2045 [RFC2045] eliminates most of the
2425 control characters from conformant usage in MIME and IPP.
2426 'iso-8859-1': 8-bit One-Byte Coded Character Set, Latin Alphabet Nr 1 [ISO8859-1]. That standard
2427 defines a coded character set that is used by Latin languages in the Western Hemisphere and
2428 Western Europe. US-ASCII is a subset charset.
2429 'iso-10646-ucs-2': ISO 10646 Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS) represented as
2430 two octets (UCS-2), with the high order octet of each pair coming first (so-called Big Endian
2431 integer).
2432

2433 Some attribute descriptions MAY place additional requirements on charset values that may be used, such
2434 as REQUIRED values that MUST be supported or additional restrictions, such as requiring that the
2435 charset have US-ASCII as a subset charset.

2436 4.1.8 'naturalLanguage'

2437 The 'naturalLanguage' attribute syntax is a standard identifier for a natural language and optionally a
2438 country. The values for this syntax type are defined by RFC 1766 [RFC1766]. Though RFC 1766
2439 requires that the values be case-insensitive US-ASCII, IPP requires all lower case to simplify comparing
2440 by IPP clients and Printer objects. Examples include:

2441 'en': for English
2442 'en-us': for US English
2443 'fr': for French
2444 'de': for German
2445

2446 The maximum length of 'naturalLanguage' values used to represent IPP attribute values is 63 octets.

2447 4.1.9 'mimeType'

2448 The 'mimeType' attribute syntax is the Internet Media Type (sometimes called MIME type) as
2449 defined by RFC 2046 [RFC2046] and registered according to the procedures of RFC 2048 [RFC2048]
2450 for identifying a document format. The value MAY include a charset parameter, depending on the
2451 specification of the Media Type in the IANA Registry [IANA-MT]. Although most other IPP syntax
2452 types allow for only lower-cased values, this syntax type allows for mixed-case values which are case-
2453 insensitive.

2454 Examples are:

2455 'text/html': An HTML document
2456 'text/plain': A plain text document in US-ASCII (RFC 2046 indicates that in the absence of the
2457 charset parameter MUST mean US-ASCII rather than simply unspecified) [RFC2046].
2458 'text/plain; charset=US-ASCII': A plain text document in US-ASCII [52, 56].

2459 'text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1': A plain text document in ISO 8859-1 (Latin 1) [ISO8859-1].
2460 'text/plain; charset=utf-8': A plain text document in ISO 10646 represented as UTF-8
2461 [RFC20442279]
2462 ~~'text/plain; charset=iso-10646-ucs-2': A plain text document in ISO 10646 represented in two octets~~
2463 ~~(UCS-2) [ISO10646-1]~~
2464 'application/postscript': A PostScript document [RFC2046]
2465 'application/vnd.hp-PCL': A PCL document [IANA-MT] (charset escape sequence embedded in the
2466 document data)
2467 ['image/tiff': Tag Image Format - see IANA MIME Media Type registry](#)
2468 ['application/pdf': Portable Document Format - see IANA MIME Media Type registry](#)
2469 'application/octet-stream': [\(REQUIRED\)](#) Auto-sense - see below
2470

2471 One special type is 'application/octet-stream'. If the Printer object supports this value, the Printer object
2472 MUST be capable of auto-sensing the format of the document data. If the Printer object's default value
2473 attribute "document-format-default" is set to 'application/octet-stream', the Printer object not only
2474 supports auto-sensing of the document format, but will depend on the result of applying its auto-sensing
2475 when the client does not supply the "document-format" attribute. If the client supplies a document
2476 format value, the Printer MUST rely on the supplied attribute, rather than trust its auto-sensing
2477 algorithm. To summarize:

- 2478 1. If the client does not supply a document format value, the Printer MUST rely on its default value
2479 setting (which may be 'application/octet-stream' indicating an auto-sensing mechanism).
- 2480 2. If the client supplies a value other than 'application/octet-stream', the client is supplying valid
2481 information about the format of the document data and the Printer object MUST trust the client
2482 supplied value more than the outcome of applying an automatic format detection mechanism.
2483 For example, the client may be requesting the printing of a PostScript file as a 'text/plain'
2484 document. The Printer object MUST print a text representation of the PostScript commands
2485 rather than interpret the stream of PostScript commands and print the result.
- 2486 3. If the client supplies a value of 'application/octet-stream', the client is indicating that the Printer
2487 object MUST use its auto-sensing mechanism on the client supplied document data whether
2488 auto-sensing is the Printer object's default or not.
2489

2490 Note: Since the auto-sensing algorithm is probabilistic, if the client requests both auto-sensing
2491 ("document-format" set to 'application/octet-stream') and true fidelity ("ipp-attribute-fidelity" set to
2492 'true'), the Printer object might not be able to guarantee exactly what the end user intended (the auto-
2493 sensing algorithm might mistake one document format for another), but it is able to guarantee that its
2494 auto-sensing mechanism be used.

2495 The maximum length of a 'mimeType' value to represent IPP attribute values is 255 octets.

2496 4.1.10 'octetString'

2497 The 'octetString' attribute syntax is a sequence of octets encoded in a maximum of 1023 octets which is
2498 indicated in sub-section headers using the notation: octetString(MAX). This syntax type is used for
2499 opaque data.

2500 4.1.11 'boolean'

2501 The 'boolean' attribute syntax has only two values: 'true' and 'false'.

2502 4.1.12 'integer'

2503 The 'integer' attribute syntax is an integer value that is in the range from -2^{31} (MIN) to $2^{31} - 1$
2504 (MAX). Each individual attribute may specify the range constraint explicitly in sub-section headers if
2505 the range is different from the full range of possible integer values. For example: job-priority
2506 (integer(1:100)) for the "job-priority" attribute. However, the enforcement of that additional constraint is
2507 up to the IPP objects, not the protocol.

2508 4.1.13 'rangeOfInteger'

2509 The 'rangeOfInteger' attribute syntax is an ordered pair of integers that defines an inclusive range of
2510 integer values. The first integer specifies the lower bound and the second specifies the upper bound. If a
2511 range constraint is specified in the header description for an attribute in this document whose attribute
2512 syntax is 'rangeOfInteger' (i.e., 'X:Y' indicating X as a minimum value and Y as a maximum value), then
2513 the constraint applies to both integers.

2514 4.1.14 'dateTime'

2515 The 'dateTime' attribute syntax is a standard, fixed length, 11 octet representation of the "DateAndTime"
2516 syntax as defined in RFC 1903 [RFC1903]. RFC 1903 also identifies an 8 octet representation of a
2517 "DateAndTime" value, but IPP objects MUST use the 11 octet representation. A user interface will
2518 provide a mapping between protocol dateTime values and displayable user-friendly words or
2519 presentation values and phrases which are localized to the natural language and date format of the user.

2520 4.1.15 'resolution'

2521 The 'resolution' attribute syntax specifies a two-dimensional resolution in the indicated units. It consists
2522 of 3 values: a cross feed direction resolution (positive integer value), a feed direction resolution (positive
2523 integer value), and a units value. The semantics of these three components are taken from the Printer
2524 MIB [RFC1759] suggested values. That is, the cross feed direction component resolution component is
2525 the same as the prtMarkerAddressabilityXFeedDir object in the Printer MIB, the feed direction
2526 component resolution component is the same as the prtMarkerAddressabilityFeedDir in the Printer MIB,
2527 and the units component is the same as the prtMarkerAddressabilityUnit object in the Printer MIB
2528 (namely, '3' indicates dots per inch and '4' indicates dots per centimeter). All three values MUST be
2529 present even if the first two values are the same. Example: '300', '600', '3' indicates a 300 dpi cross-feed
2530 direction resolution, a 600 dpi feed direction resolution, since a '3' indicates dots per inch (dpi).

2531 4.1.16 '1setOf X'

2532 The '1setOf X' attribute syntax is 1 or more values of attribute syntax type X. This syntax type is used
2533 for multi-valued attributes. The syntax type is called '1setOf' rather than just 'setOf' as a reminder that

2534 the set of values MUST NOT be empty (i.e., a set of size 0). Sets are normally unordered. However
2535 each attribute description of this type may specify that the values MUST be in a certain order for that
2536 attribute.

2537 4.2 Job Template Attributes

2538 Job Template attributes describe job processing behavior. Support for Job Template attributes by a
2539 Printer object is OPTIONAL (see section 13.2.3 for a description of support for OPTIONAL attributes).
2540 Also, clients OPTIONALLY supply Job Template attributes in create requests.

2541 Job Template attributes conform to the following rules. For each Job Template attribute called "xxx":

2542 1. If the Printer object supports "xxx" then it MUST support both a "xxx-default" attribute (unless
2543 there is a "No" in the table below) and a "xxx-supported" attribute. If the Printer object doesn't
2544 support "xxx", then it MUST support neither an "xxx-default" attribute nor an "xxx-supported"
2545 attribute, and it MUST treat an attribute "xxx" supplied by a client as unsupported. An attribute
2546 "xxx" may be supported for some document formats and not supported for other document
2547 formats. For example, it is expected that a Printer object would only support "orientation-
2548 requested" for some document formats (such as 'text/plain' or 'text/html') but not others (such as
2549 'application/postscript').

2550
2551 2. "xxx" is OPTIONALLY supplied by the client in a create request. If "xxx" is supplied, the client
2552 is indicating a desired job processing behavior for this Job. When "xxx" is not supplied, the
2553 client is indicating that the Printer object apply its default job processing behavior at job
2554 processing time if the document content does not contain an embedded instruction indicating an
2555 xxx-related behavior.

2556
2557 Note: Since an administrator MAY change the default value attribute after a Job object has been
2558 submitted but before it has been processed, the default value used by the Printer object at job
2559 processing time may be different that the default value in effect at job submission time.

2560
2561 3. The "xxx-supported" attribute is a Printer object attribute that describes which job processing
2562 behaviors are supported by that Printer object. A client can query the Printer object to find out
2563 what xxx-related behaviors are supported by inspecting the returned values of the "xxx-
2564 supported" attribute.

2565
2566 Note: The "xxx" in each "xxx-supported" attribute name is singular, even though an "xxx-
2567 supported" attribute usually has more than one value, such as "job-sheet-supported", unless the
2568 "xxx" Job Template attribute is plural, such as "finishings" or "sides". In such cases the "xxx-
2569 supported" attribute names are: "finishings-supported" and "sides-supported".

2570
2571 4. The "xxx-default" default value attribute describes what will be done at job processing time when
2572 no other job processing information is supplied by the client (either explicitly as an IPP attribute
2573 in the create request or implicitly as an embedded instruction within the document data).

2574

2575 If an application wishes to present an end user with a list of supported values from which to choose, the
2576 application SHOULD query the Printer object for its supported value attributes. The application
2577 SHOULD also query the default value attributes. If the application then limits selectable values to only
2578 those value that are supported, the application can guarantee that the values supplied by the client in the
2579 create request all fall within the set of supported values at the Printer. When querying the Printer, the
2580 client MAY enumerate each attribute by name in the Get-Printer-Attributes Request, or the client MAY
2581 just name the "job-template" group in order to get the complete set of supported attributes (both
2582 supported and default attributes).

2583 The "finishings" attribute is an example of a Job Template attribute. It can take on a set of values such
2584 as 'staple', 'punch', and/or 'cover'. A client can query the Printer object for the "finishings-supported"
2585 attribute and the "finishings-default" attribute. The supported attribute contains a set of supported
2586 values. The default value attribute contains the finishing value(s) that will be used for a new Job if the
2587 client does not supply a "finishings" attribute in the create request and the document data does not
2588 contain any corresponding finishing instructions. If the client does supply the "finishings" attribute in
2589 the create request, the IPP object validates the value or values to make sure that they are a subset of the
2590 supported values identified in the Printer object's "finishings-supported" attribute. See section 3.2.1.2.

2591 The table below summarizes the names and relationships for all Job Template attributes. The first
2592 column of the table (labeled "Job Attribute") shows the name and syntax for each Job Template attribute
2593 in the Job object. These are the attributes that can optionally be supplied by the client in a create request.
2594 The last two columns (labeled "Printer: Default Value Attribute" and "Printer: Supported Values
2595 Attribute") shows the name and syntax for each Job Template attribute in the Printer object (the default
2596 value attribute and the supported values attribute). A "No" in the table means the Printer MUST NOT
2597 support the attribute (that is, the attribute is simply not applicable). For brevity in the table, the 'text' and
2598 'name' entries do not show the maximum length for each attribute.

2599	+	=====+	=====+	=====+
2600		Job Attribute	Printer: Default Value	Printer: Supported
2601			Attribute	Values Attribute
2602		=====+	=====+	=====+
2603		job-priority	job-priority-default	job-priority-supported
2604		(integer 1:100)	(integer 1:100)	(integer 1:100)
2605		-----+	-----+	-----+
2606		job-hold-until	job-hold-until-	job-hold-until-
2607		(type3 keyword	default	supported
2608		name)	(type3 keyword	(1setOf
2609			name)	type3 keyword name)
2610		-----+	-----+	-----+
2611		job-sheets	job-sheets-default	job-sheets-supported
2612		(type3 keyword	(type3 keyword	(1setOf
2613		name)	name)	type3 keyword name)
2614		-----+	-----+	-----+
2615		multiple-document-	multiple-document-	multiple-document-
2616		handling	handling-default	handling-supported
2617		(type2 keyword)	(type2 keyword)	(1setOf type2 keyword)
2618		-----+	-----+	-----+
2619		copies	copies-default	copies-supported
2620		(integer (1:MAX))	(integer (1:MAX))	(rangeOfInteger
2621				(1:MAX))
2622		-----+	-----+	-----+
2623		finishings	finishings-default	finishings-supported
2624		(1setOf type2 enum)	(1setOf type2 enum)	(1setOf type2 enum)
2625		-----+	-----+	-----+
2626		page-ranges	No	page-ranges-
2627		(1setOf		supported (boolean)
2628		rangeOfInteger		
2629		(1:MAX))		
2630		-----+	-----+	-----+
2631		sides	sides-default	sides-supported
2632		(type2 keyword)	(type2 keyword)	(1setOf type2 keyword)
2633		-----+	-----+	-----+
2634		number-up	number-up-default	number-up-supported
2635		(integer (1:MAX))	(integer (1:MAX))	(1setOf integer
2636				(1:MAX)
2637				rangeOfInteger
2638				(1:MAX))
2639		-----+	-----+	-----+
2640		orientation-	orientation-requested-	orientation-requested-
2641		requested	default	supported
2642		(type2 enum)	(type2 enum)	(1setOf type2 enum)
2643		-----+	-----+	-----+
2644		media	media-default	media-supported
2645		(type3 keyword	(type3 keyword	(1setOf
2646		name)	name)	type3 keyword name)
2647				
2648				media-ready

2649			(1setOf
2650			type3 keyword name)
2651	+-----+-----+-----+		
2652	printer-resolution	printer-resolution-	printer-resolution-
2653	(resolution)	default	supported
2654		(resolution)	(1setOf resolution)
2655	+-----+-----+-----+		
2656	print-quality	print-quality-default	print-quality-
2657	(type2 enum)	(type2 enum)	supported
2658			(1setOf type2 enum)
2659	+-----+-----+-----+		

2660

2661

2662 4.2.1 job-priority (integer(1:100))

2663 This attribute specifies a priority for scheduling the Job. A higher value specifies a higher priority. The
 2664 value 1 indicates the lowest possible priority. The value 100 indicates the highest possible priority.
 2665 Among those jobs that are ready to print, a Printer MUST print all jobs with a priority value of n before
 2666 printing those with a priority value of n-1 for all n.

2667 If the Printer object supports this attribute, it MUST always support the full range from 1 to 100. No
 2668 administrative restrictions are permitted. This way an end-user can always make full use of the entire
 2669 range with any Printer object. If privileged jobs are implemented outside IPP/1.1, they MUST have
 2670 priorities higher than 100, rather than restricting the range available to end-users.

2671 If the client does not supply this attribute and this attribute is supported by the Printer object, the Printer
 2672 object MUST use the value of the Printer object's "job-priority-default" at job submission time (unlike
 2673 most Job Template attributes that are used if necessary at job processing time).

2674 The syntax for the "job-priority-supported" is also integer(1:100). This single integer value indicates the
 2675 number of priority levels supported. The Printer object MUST take the value supplied by the client and
 2676 map it to the closest integer in a sequence of n integers values that are evenly distributed over the range
 2677 from 1 to 100 using the formula:

2678
$$\text{roundToNearestInt}((100x+50)/n)$$

2679 where n is the value of "job-priority-supported" and x ranges from 0 through n-1.

2680 For example, if n=1 the sequence of values is 50; if n=2, the sequence of values is: 25 and 75; if n = 3,
 2681 the sequence of values is: 17, 50 and 83; if n = 10, the sequence of values is: 5, 15, 25, 35, 45, 55, 65,
 2682 75, 85, and 95; if n = 100, the sequence of values is: 1, 2, 3, ... 100.

2683 If the value of the Printer object's "job-priority-supported" is 10 and the client supplies values in the
 2684 range 1 to 10, the Printer object maps them to 5, in the range 11 to 20, the Printer object maps them to
 2685 15, etc.

2686 4.2.2 job-hold-until (type3 keyword | name (MAX))

2687 This attribute specifies the named time period during which the Job MUST become a candidate for
2688 printing.

2689 Standard keyword values for named time periods are:

2690 'no-hold': immediately, if there are not other reasons to hold the job

2691 ~~'indefinite': - the job is held indefinitely, until a client performs a Release-Job (section 3.3.6) or~~

2692 ~~Restart-Job (section 3.3.7) operation~~

2693 'day-time': during the day

2694 'evening': evening

2695 'night': night

2696 'weekend': weekend

2697 'second-shift': second-shift (after close of business)

2698 'third-shift': third-shift (after midnight)

2699

2700 An administrator MUST associate allowable print times with a named time period (by means outside [the](#)
2701 [scope of this IPP/4.01.1 document](#)). An administrator is encouraged to pick names that suggest the type
2702 of time period. An administrator MAY define additional values using the 'name' or 'keyword' attribute
2703 syntax, depending on implementation.

2704 If the value of this attribute specifies a time period that is in the future, the Printer MUST add the 'job-
2705 hold-until-specified' value to the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute, move the job to the 'pending-held'
2706 state, and MUST NOT schedule the job for printing until the specified time-period arrives. When the
2707 specified time period arrives, the Printer MUST remove the 'job-hold-until-specified' value from the
2708 job's "job-state-reason" attribute and, if there are no other job state reasons that keep the job in the
2709 'pending-held' state, the Printer MUST consider the job as a candidate for processing by moving the job
2710 to the 'pending' state.

2711 If this job attribute value is the named value 'no-hold', or the specified time period has already started,
2712 the job MUST be a candidate for processing immediately.

2713 If the client does not supply this attribute and this attribute is supported by the Printer object, the Printer
2714 object MUST use the value of the Printer object's "job-hold-until-default" at job submission time (unlike
2715 most Job Template attributes that are used if necessary at job processing time).

2716 4.2.3 job-sheets (type3 keyword | name(MAX))

2717 This attribute determines which job start/end sheet(s), if any, MUST be printed with a job.

2718 Standard keyword values are:

2719 'none': no job sheet is printed

2720 'standard': one or more site specific standard job sheets are printed, e.g. a single start sheet or both
2721 start and end sheet is printed

2722

2723 An administrator MAY define additional values using the 'name' or 'keyword' attribute syntax, depending
2724 on implementation.

2725 Note: The effect of this attribute on jobs with multiple documents MAY be affected by the "multiple-
2726 document-handling" job attribute (section 4.2.4), depending on the job sheet semantics.

2727 4.2.4 multiple-document-handling (type2 keyword)

2728 This attribute is relevant only if a job consists of two or more documents. The attribute controls finishing
2729 operations and the placement of one or more print-stream pages into impressions and onto media sheets.
2730 When the value of the "copies" attribute exceeds 1, it also controls the order in which the copies that
2731 result from processing the documents are produced. For the purposes of this explanations, if "a"
2732 represents an instance of document data, then the result of processing the data in document "a" is a
2733 sequence of media sheets represented by "a(*)".

2734 Standard keyword values are:

2735 'single-document': If a Job object has multiple documents, say, the document data is called a and b,
2736 then the result of processing all the document data (a and then b) MUST be treated as a single
2737 sequence of media sheets for finishing operations; that is, finishing would be performed on the
2738 concatenation of the sequences a(*),b(*). The Printer object MUST NOT force the data in each
2739 document instance to be formatted onto a new print-stream page, nor to start a new impression
2740 on a new media sheet. If more than one copy is made, the ordering of the sets of media sheets
2741 resulting from processing the document data MUST be a(*), b(*), a(*), b(*), ..., and the Printer
2742 object MUST force each copy (a(*),b(*)) to start on a new media sheet.

2743 'separate-documents-uncollated-copies': If a Job object has multiple documents, say, the document
2744 data is called a and b, then the result of processing the data in each document instance MUST be
2745 treated as a single sequence of media sheets for finishing operations; that is, the sets a(*) and b(*)
2746 would each be finished separately. The Printer object MUST force each copy of the result of
2747 processing the data in a single document to start on a new media sheet. If more than one copy is
2748 made, the ordering of the sets of media sheets resulting from processing the document data
2749 MUST be a(*), a(*), ..., b(*), b(*)

2750 'separate-documents-collated-copies': If a Job object has multiple documents, say, the document data
2751 is called a and b, then the result of processing the data in each document instance MUST be
2752 treated as a single sequence of media sheets for finishing operations; that is, the sets a(*) and b(*)
2753 would each be finished separately. The Printer object MUST force each copy of the result of
2754 processing the data in a single document to start on a new media sheet. If more than one copy is
2755 made, the ordering of the sets of media sheets resulting from processing the document data
2756 MUST be a(*), b(*), a(*), b(*),

2757 'single-document-new-sheet': Same as 'single-document', except that the Printer object MUST
2758 ensure that the first impression of each document instance in the job is placed on a new media
2759 sheet. This value allows multiple documents to be stapled together with a single staple where
2760 each document starts on a new sheet.

2761

2762 The 'single-document' value is the same as 'separate-documents-collated-copies' with respect to ordering
 2763 of print-stream pages, but not media sheet generation, since 'single-document' will put the first page of
 2764 the next document on the back side of a sheet if an odd number of pages have been produced so far for
 2765 the job, while 'separate-documents-collated-copies' always forces the next document or document copy
 2766 on to a new sheet. In addition, if the "finishings" attribute specifies 'staple', then with 'single-document',
 2767 documents a and b are stapled together as a single document with no regard to new sheets, with 'single-
 2768 document-new-sheet', documents a and b are stapled together as a single document, but document b
 2769 starts on a new sheet, but with 'separate-documents-uncollated-copies' and 'separate-documents-collated-
 2770 copies', documents a and b are stapled separately.

2771 Note: None of these values provide means to produce uncollated sheets within a document, i.e., where
 2772 multiple copies of sheet n are produced before sheet n+1 of the same document.

2773 The relationship of this attribute and the other attributes that control document processing is described in
 2774 section 16.3.

2775 4.2.5 copies (integer(1:MAX))

2776 This attribute specifies the number of copies to be printed.

2777 On many devices the supported number of collated copies will be limited by the number of physical
 2778 output bins on the device, and may be different from the number of uncollated copies which can be
 2779 supported.

2780 Note: The effect of this attribute on jobs with multiple documents is controlled by the "multiple-
 2781 document-handling" job attribute (section 4.2.4) and the relationship of this attribute and the other
 2782 attributes that control document processing is described in section 16.3.

2783 4.2.6 finishings (1setOf type2 enum)

2784 This attribute identifies the finishing operations that the Printer uses for each copy of each printed
 2785 document in the Job. For Jobs with multiple documents, the "multiple-document-handling" attribute
 2786 determines what constitutes a "copy" for purposes of finishing.

2787 Standard enum values are:

2788	Value	Symbolic Name and Description
2789		
2790	'3'	'none': Perform no finishing
2791	'4'	'staple': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples. The exact number and placement
2792		of the staples is site-defined.
2793	'5'	'punch': This value indicates that holes are required in the finished document. The exact
2794		number and placement of the holes is site-defined The punch specification MAY
2795		be satisfied (in a site- and implementation-specific manner) either by
2796		drilling/punching, or by substituting pre-drilled media.

- 2797 '6' 'cover': This value is specified when it is desired to select a non-printed (or pre-printed)
2798 cover for the document. This does not supplant the specification of a printed cover
2799 (on cover stock medium) by the document itself.
- 2800 '7' 'bind': This value indicates that a binding is to be applied to the document; the type and
2801 placement of the binding is site-defined."
- 2802
- 2803 '8' 'saddle-stitch': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples (wire stitches) along the
2804 middle fold. The exact number and placement of the staples and the middle fold
2805 is implementation and/or site-defined.
- 2806 '9' 'edge-stitch': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples (wire stitches) along one
2807 edge. The exact number and placement of the staples is implementation and/or
2808 site-defined.
- 2809 '10'-'19' reserved for future generic finishing enum values.

2810 The following values are more specific; they indicate a corner or an edge as if the document were a
2811 portrait document (see below):

- 2812 '20' 'staple-top-left': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples in the top left corner.
- 2813 '21' 'staple-bottom-left': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples in the bottom left
2814 corner.
- 2815 '22' 'staple-top-right': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples in the top right corner.
- 2816 '23' 'staple-bottom-right': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples in the bottom right
2817 corner.
- 2818 '24' 'edge-stitch-left': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples (wire stitches) along the
2819 left edge. The exact number and placement of the staples is implementation
2820 and/or site-defined.
- 2821 '25' 'edge-stitch-top': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples (wire stitches) along the
2822 top edge. The exact number and placement of the staples is implementation
2823 and/or site-defined.
- 2824 '26' 'edge-stitch-right': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples (wire stitches) along
2825 the right edge. The exact number and placement of the staples is implementation
2826 and/or site-defined.
- 2827 '27' 'edge-stitch-bottom': Bind the document(s) with one or more staples (wire stitches) along
2828 the bottom edge. The exact number and placement of the staples is
2829 implementation and/or site-defined.
- 2830 '28' 'staple-dual-left': Bind the document(s) with two staples (wire stitches) along the left
2831 edge assuming a portrait document (see above).
- 2832 '29' 'staple-dual-top': Bind the document(s) with two staples (wire stitches) along the top
2833 edge assuming a portrait document (see above).
- 2834 '30' 'staple-dual-right': Bind the document(s) with two staples (wire stitches) along the right
2835 edge assuming a portrait document (see above).
- 2836 '31' 'staple-dual-bottom': Bind the document(s) with two staples (wire stitches) along the
2837 bottom edge assuming a portrait document (see above).

2838 The 'staple-xxx' values are specified with respect to the document as if the document were a portrait
2839 document. If the document is actually a landscape or a reverse-landscape document, the client supplies
2840 the appropriate transformed value. For example, to position a staple in the upper left hand corner of a

2841 landscape document when held for reading, the client supplies the 'staple-bottom-left' value (since
2842 landscape is defined as a +90 degree rotation from portrait, i.e., anti-clockwise). On the other hand, to
2843 position a staple in the upper left hand corner of a reverse-landscape document when held for reading,
2844 the client supplies the 'staple-top-right' value (since reverse-landscape is defined as a -90 degree rotation
2845 from portrait, i.e., clockwise).

2846 The angle (vertical, horizontal, angled) of each staple with respect to the document depends on the
2847 implementation which may in turn depend on the value of the attribute.

2848 Note: The effect of this attribute on jobs with multiple documents is controlled by the "multiple-
2849 document-handling" job attribute (section 4.2.4) and the relationship of this attribute and the other
2850 attributes that control document processing is described in section 16.3.

2851 If the client supplies a value of 'none' along with any other combination of values, it is the same as if
2852 only that other combination of values had been supplied (that is the 'none' value has no effect).

2853 4.2.7 page-ranges (1setOf rangeOfInteger (1:MAX))

2854 This attribute identifies the range(s) of print-stream pages that the Printer object uses for each copy of
2855 each document which are to be printed. Nothing is printed for any pages identified that do not exist in
2856 the document(s). Ranges MUST be in ascending order, for example: 1-3, 5-7, 15-19 and MUST NOT
2857 overlap, so that a non-spooling Printer object can process the job in a single pass. If the ranges are not
2858 ascending or are overlapping, the IPP object MUST reject the request and return the 'client-error-bad-
2859 request' status code. The attribute is associated with print-stream pages not application-numbered pages
2860 (for example, the page numbers found in the headers and or footers for certain word processing
2861 applications).

2862 For Jobs with multiple documents, the "multiple-document-handling" attribute determines what
2863 constitutes a "copy" for purposes of the specified page range(s). When "multiple-document-handling" is
2864 'single-document', the Printer object MUST apply each supplied page range once to the concatenation of
2865 the print-stream pages. For example, if there are 8 documents of 10 pages each, the page-range '41:60'
2866 prints the pages in the 5th and 6th documents as a single document and none of the pages of the other
2867 documents are printed. When "multiple-document-handling" is 'separate-document-uncollated-copies' or
2868 'separate-document-collated-copies', the Printer object MUST apply each supplied page range repeatedly
2869 to each document copy. For the same job, the page-range '1:3, 10:10' would print the first 3 pages and
2870 the 10th page of each of the 8 documents in the Job, as 8 separate documents.

2871 In most cases, the exact pages to be printed will be generated by a device driver and this attribute would
2872 not be required. However, when printing an archived document which has already been formatted, the
2873 end user may elect to print just a subset of the pages contained in the document. In this case, if page-
2874 range = n.m is specified, the first page to be printed will be page n. All subsequent pages of the
2875 document will be printed through and including page m.

2876 "page-ranges-supported" is a boolean value indicating whether or not the printer is capable of supporting
2877 the printing of page ranges. This capability may differ from one PDL to another. There is no "page-

2878 ranges-default" attribute. If the "page-ranges" attribute is not supplied by the client, all pages of the
2879 document will be printed.

2880 Note: The effect of this attribute on jobs with multiple documents is controlled by the "multiple-
2881 document-handling" job attribute (section 4.2.4) and the relationship of this attribute and the other
2882 attributes that control document processing is described in section 16.3.

2883 4.2.8 sides (type2 keyword)

2884 This attribute specifies how print-stream pages are to be imposed upon the sides of an instance of a
2885 selected medium, i.e., an impression.

2886 The standard keyword values are:

2887 'one-sided': imposes each consecutive print-stream page upon the same side of consecutive media
2888 sheets.

2889 'two-sided-long-edge': imposes each consecutive pair of print-stream pages upon front and back sides
2890 of consecutive media sheets, such that the orientation of each pair of print-stream pages on the
2891 medium would be correct for the reader as if for binding on the long edge. This imposition is
2892 sometimes called 'duplex' or 'head-to-head'.

2893 'two-sided-short-edge': imposes each consecutive pair of print-stream pages upon front and back
2894 sides of consecutive media sheets, such that the orientation of each pair of print-stream pages on
2895 the medium would be correct for the reader as if for binding on the short edge. This imposition
2896 is sometimes called 'tumble' or 'head-to-toe'.

2897

2898 'two-sided-long-edge', 'two-sided-short-edge', 'tumble', and 'duplex' all work the same for portrait or
2899 landscape. However 'head-to-toe' is 'tumble' in portrait but 'duplex' in landscape. 'head-to-head' also
2900 switches between 'duplex' and 'tumble' when using portrait and landscape modes.

2901 Note: The effect of this attribute on jobs with multiple documents is controlled by the "multiple-
2902 document-handling" job attribute (section 4.2.4) and the relationship of this attribute and the other
2903 attributes that control document processing is described in section 16.3.

2904 4.2.9 number-up (integer(1:MAX))

2905 This attribute specifies the number of print-stream pages to impose upon a single side of an instance of a
2906 selected medium. For example, if the value is:

2907 Value	Description
2908 '1'	the Printer MUST place one print-stream page on a single side of an instance of the
2909	selected medium (MAY add some sort of translation, scaling, or rotation).
2910 '2'	the Printer MUST place two print-stream pages on a single side of an instance of the
2911	selected medium (MAY add some sort of translation, scaling, or rotation).
2912 '4'	the Printer MUST place four print-stream pages on a single side of an instance of the
2913	selected medium (MAY add some sort of translation, scaling, or rotation).
2914	

2915

2916 This attribute primarily controls the translation, scaling and rotation of print-stream pages.

2917 Note: The effect of this attribute on jobs with multiple documents is controlled by the "multiple-
2918 document-handling" job attribute (section 4.2.4) and the relationship of this attribute and the other
2919 attributes that control document processing is described in section 16.3.

2920 4.2.10 orientation-requested (type2 enum)

2921 This attribute indicates the desired orientation for printed print-stream pages; it does not describe the
2922 orientation of the client-supplied print-stream pages.

2923 For some document formats (such as 'application/postscript'), the desired orientation of the print-stream
2924 pages is specified within the document data. This information is generated by a device driver prior to
2925 the submission of the print job. Other document formats (such as 'text/plain') do not include the notion
2926 of desired orientation within the document data. In the latter case it is possible for the Printer object to
2927 bind the desired orientation to the document data after it has been submitted. It is expected that a Printer
2928 object would only support "orientations-requested" for some document formats (e.g., 'text/plain' or
2929 'text/html') but not others (e.g., 'application/postscript'). This is no different than any other Job Template
2930 attribute since section 4.2, item 1, points out that a Printer object may support or not support any Job
2931 Template attribute based on the document format supplied by the client. However, a special mention is
2932 made here since it is very likely that a Printer object will support "orientation-requested" for only a
2933 subset of the supported document formats.

2934 Standard enum values are:

2935 Value	2936 Symbolic Name and Description
2937 '3'	'portrait': The content will be imaged across the short edge of the medium.
2938 '4'	'landscape': The content will be imaged across the long edge of the medium. Landscape 2939 is defined to be a rotation of the print-stream page to be imaged by +90 degrees 2940 with respect to the medium (i.e. anti-clockwise) from the portrait orientation. 2941 Note: The +90 direction was chosen because simple finishing on the long edge is 2942 the same edge whether portrait or landscape
2943 '5'	'reverse-landscape': The content will be imaged across the long edge of the medium. 2944 Reverse-landscape is defined to be a rotation of the print-stream page to be 2945 imaged by -90 degrees with respect to the medium (i.e. clockwise) from the 2946 portrait orientation. Note: The 'reverse-landscape' value was added because some 2947 applications rotate landscape -90 degrees from portrait, rather than +90 degrees.
2948 '6'	'reverse-portrait': The content will be imaged across the short edge of the medium. 2949 Reverse-portrait is defined to be a rotation of the print-stream page to be imaged 2950 by 180 degrees with respect to the medium from the portrait orientation. Note: 2951 The 'reverse-portrait' value was added for use with the "finishings" attribute in 2952 cases where the opposite edge is desired for finishing a portrait document on 2953 simple finishing devices that have only one finishing position. Thus a 'text/plain'

2954 portrait document can be stapled "on the right" by a simple finishing device as is
2955 common use with some middle eastern languages such as Hebrew.
2956

2957 Note: The effect of this attribute on jobs with multiple documents is controlled by the "multiple-
2958 document-handling" job attribute (section 4.2.4) and the relationship of this attribute and the other
2959 attributes that control document processing is described in section 16.3.

2960 4.2.11 media (type3 keyword | name(MAX))

2961 This attribute identifies the medium that the Printer uses for all impressions of the Job.

2962 The values for "media" include medium-names, medium-sizes, input-trays and electronic forms so that
2963 one attribute specifies the media. If a Printer object supports a medium name as a value of this attribute,
2964 such a medium name implicitly selects an input-tray that contains the specified medium. If a Printer
2965 object supports a medium size as a value of this attribute, such a medium size implicitly selects a
2966 medium name that in turn implicitly selects an input-tray that contains the medium with the specified
2967 size. If a Printer object supports an input-tray as the value of this attribute, such an input-tray implicitly
2968 selects the medium that is in that input-tray at the time the job prints. This case includes manual-feed
2969 input-trays. If a Printer object supports an electronic form as the value of this attribute, such an
2970 electronic form implicitly selects a medium-name that in turn implicitly selects an input-tray that
2971 contains the medium specified by the electronic form. The electronic form also implicitly selects an
2972 image that the Printer MUST merge with the document data as its prints each page.

2973 Standard keyword values are (taken from ISO DPA and the Printer MIB) and are listed in section 15. An
2974 administrator MAY define additional values using the 'name' or 'keyword' attribute syntax, depending on
2975 implementation.

2976 There is also an additional Printer attribute named "media-ready" which differs from "media-supported"
2977 in that legal values only include the subset of "media-supported" values that are physically loaded and
2978 ready for printing with no operator intervention required. If an IPP object supports "media-supported", it
2979 NEED NOT support "media-ready".

2980 The relationship of this attribute and the other attributes that control document processing is described in
2981 section 16.3.

2982 4.2.12 printer-resolution (resolution)

2983 This attribute identifies the resolution that Printer uses for the Job.

2984 4.2.13 print-quality (type2 enum)

2985 This attribute specifies the print quality that the Printer uses for the Job.

2986 The standard enum values are:

2987 Value Symbolic Name and Description

2988

2989 '3' 'draft': lowest quality available on the printer

2990 '4' 'normal': normal or intermediate quality on the printer

2991 '5' 'high': highest quality available on the printer

2992

2993 4.3 Job Description Attributes

2994 The attributes in this section form the attribute group called "job-description". The following table
2995 summarizes these attributes. The third column indicates whether the attribute is a REQUIRED attribute
2996 that MUST be supported by Printer objects. If it is not indicated as REQUIRED, then it is OPTIONAL.
2997 The maximum size in octets for 'text' and 'name' attributes is indicated in parentheses.

	Attribute	Syntax	REQUIRED?
2998			
2999			
3000			
3001	job-uri	uri	REQUIRED
3002			
3003	job-id	integer(1:MAX)	REQUIRED
3004			
3005	job-printer-uri	uri	REQUIRED
3006			
3007	job-more-info	uri	
3008			
3009	job-name	name (MAX)	REQUIRED
3010			
3011	job-originating-user-name	name (MAX)	REQUIRED
3012			
3013	job-state	type1 enum	REQUIRED
3014			
3015	job-state-reasons	1setOf type2 keyword	
3016			
3017	job-state-message	text (MAX)	
3018			
3019	number-of-documents	integer (0:MAX)	
3020			
3021	output-device-assigned	name (127)	
3022			
3023	time-at-creation	integer (0:MAX)	
3024			
3025	time-at-processing	integer (0:MAX)	
3026			
3027	time-at-completed	integer (0:MAX)	
3028			
3029	number-of-intervening-jobs	integer (0:MAX)	
3030			
3031	job-message-from-operator	text (127)	
3032			
3033	job-k-octets	integer (0:MAX)	
3034			
3035	job-impressions	integer (0:MAX)	
3036			
3037	job-media-sheets	integer (0:MAX)	
3038			
3039	job-k-octets-processed	integer (0:MAX)	
3040			
3041	job-impressions-completed	integer (0:MAX)	
3042			
3043	job-media-sheets-completed	integer (0:MAX)	
3044			
3045	attributes-charset	charset	REQUIRED
3046			
3047	attributes-natural-language	naturalLanguage	REQUIRED

3048 +-----+-----+-----+
3049
3050

3051 4.3.1 job-uri (uri)

3052 This REQUIRED attribute contains the URI for the job. The Printer object, on receipt of a new job,
3053 generates a URI which identifies the new Job. The Printer object returns the value of the "job-uri"
3054 attribute as part of the response to a create request. The precise format of a Job URI is implementation
3055 dependent. If the Printer object supports more than one URI and there is some relationship between the
3056 newly formed Job URI and the Printer object's URI, the Printer object uses the Printer URI supplied by
3057 the client in the create request. For example, if the create request comes in over a secure channel, the
3058 new Job URI MUST use the same secure channel. This can be guaranteed because the Printer object is
3059 responsible for generating the Job URI and the Printer object is aware of its security configuration and
3060 policy as well as the Printer URI used in the create request.

3061 For a description of this attribute and its relationship to "job-id" and "job-printer-uri" attribute, see the
3062 discussion in section 2.4 on "Object Identity".

3063 4.3.2 job-id (integer(1:MAX))

3064 This REQUIRED attribute contains the ID of the job. The Printer, on receipt of a new job, generates an
3065 ID which identifies the new Job on that Printer. The Printer returns the value of the "job-id" attribute as
3066 part of the response to a create request. The 0 value is not included to allow for compatibility with
3067 SNMP index values which also cannot be 0.

3068 For a description of this attribute and its relationship to "job-uri" and "job-printer-uri" attribute, see the
3069 discussion in section 2.4 on "Object Identity".

3070 4.3.3 job-printer-uri (uri)

3071 This REQUIRED attribute identifies the Printer object that created this Job object. When a Printer
3072 object creates a Job object, it populates this attribute with the Printer object URI that was used in the
3073 create request. This attribute permits a client to identify the Printer object that created this Job object
3074 when only the Job object's URI is available to the client. The client queries the creating Printer object to
3075 determine which languages, charsets, operations, are supported for this Job.

3076 For a description of this attribute and its relationship to "job-uri" and "job-id" attribute, see the
3077 discussion in section 2.4 on "Object Identity".

3078 4.3.4 job-more-info (uri)

3079 Similar to "printer-more-info", this attribute contains the URI referencing some resource with more
3080 information about this Job object, perhaps an HTML page containing information about the Job.

3081 4.3.5 job-name (name(MAX))

3082 This REQUIRED attribute is the name of the job. It is a name that is more user friendly than the "job-
 3083 uri" attribute value. It does not need to be unique between Jobs. The Job's "job-name" attribute is set to
 3084 the value supplied by the client in the "job-name" operation attribute in the create request (see Section
 3085 3.2.1.1). If, however, the "job-name" operation attribute is not supplied by the client in the create
 3086 request, the Printer object, on creation of the Job, MUST generate a name. The printer SHOULD
 3087 generate the value of the Job's "job-name" attribute from the first of the following sources that produces
 3088 a value: 1) the "document-name" operation attribute of the first (or only) document, 2) the "document-
 3089 URI" attribute of the first (or only) document, or 3) any other piece of Job specific and/or Document
 3090 Content information.

3091 4.3.6 job-originating-user-name (name(MAX))

3092 This REQUIRED attribute contains the name of the end user that submitted the print job. The Printer
 3093 object sets this attribute to the most authenticated printable name that it can obtain from the
 3094 authentication service over which the IPP operation was received. Only if such is not available, does the
 3095 Printer object use the value supplied by the client in the "requesting-user-name" operation attribute of the
 3096 create operation (see Section 8).

3097 Note: The Printer object needs to keep an internal originating user id of some form, typically as a
 3098 credential of a principal, with the Job object. Since such an internal attribute is implementation-
 3099 dependent and not of interest to clients, it is not specified as a Job Description attribute. This originating
 3100 user id is used for authorization checks (if any) on all subsequent operation.

3101 4.3.7 job-state (type1 enum)

3102 This REQUIRED attribute identifies the current state of the job. Even though the IPP protocol defines
 3103 ~~eight~~seven values for job states (plus the out-of-band 'unknown' value - see Section 4.1),
 3104 implementations only need to support those states which are appropriate for the particular
 3105 implementation. In other words, a Printer supports only those job states implemented by the output
 3106 device and available to the Printer object implementation.

3107 Standard enum values are:

3108	Values	Symbolic Name and Description
3109		
3110	'3'	'pending': The job is a candidate to start processing, but is not yet processing.
3111		
3112	'4'	'pending-held': The job is not a candidate for processing for any number of reasons but 3113 will return to the 'pending' state as soon as the reasons are no longer present. The 3114 job's "job-state-reason" attribute MUST indicate why the job is no longer a 3115 candidate for processing.
3116		
3117	'5'	'processing': One or more of:
3118		

- 3119 1. the job is using, or is attempting to use, one or more purely software processes
 3120 that are analyzing, creating, or interpreting a PDL, etc.,
 3121 2. the job is using, or is attempting to use, one or more hardware devices that are
 3122 interpreting a PDL, making marks on a medium, and/or performing finishing,
 3123 such as stapling, etc.,
 3124 3. the Printer object has made the job ready for printing, but the output device is
 3125 not yet printing it, either because the job hasn't reached the output device or
 3126 because the job is queued in the output device or some other spooler, awaiting the
 3127 output device to print it.
 3128

3129 When the job is in the 'processing' state, the entire job state includes the detailed
 3130 status represented in the printer's "printer-state", "printer-state-reasons", and
 3131 "printer-state-message" attributes.

3132 Implementations MAY, though they NEED NOT, include additional values in the
 3133 job's "job-state-reasons" attribute to indicate the progress of the job, such as
 3134 adding the 'job-printing' value to indicate when the output device is actually
 3135 making marks on paper and/or the 'processing-to-stop-point' value to indicate that
 3136 the IPP object is in the process of canceling or aborting the job. Most
 3137 implementations won't bother with this nuance.
 3138

3139 '6' 'processing-stopped': The job has stopped while processing for any number of reasons
 3140 and will return to the 'processing' state as soon as the reasons are no longer
 3141 present.
 3142

3143 The job's "job-state-reason" attribute MAY indicate why the job has stopped
 3144 processing. For example, if the output device is stopped, the 'printer-stopped'
 3145 value MAY be included in the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute.
 3146

3147 Note: When an output device is stopped, the device usually indicates its condition
 3148 in human readable form locally at the device. A client can obtain more complete
 3149 device status remotely by querying the Printer object's "printer-state", "printer-
 3150 state-reasons" and "printer-state-message" attributes.
 3151

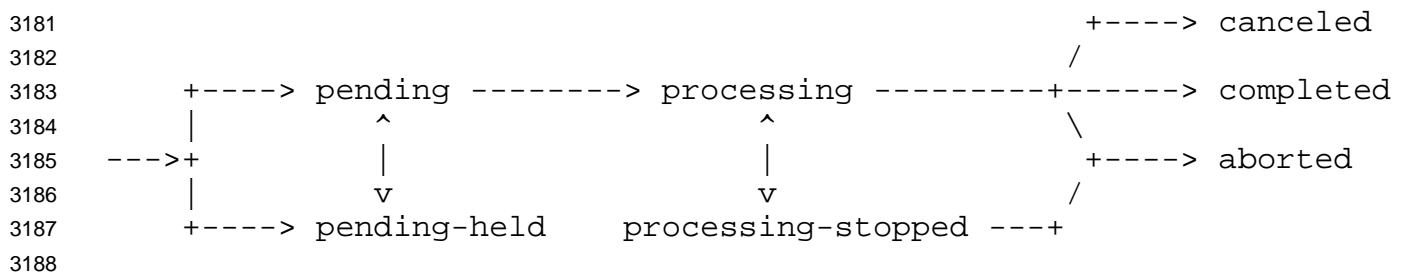
3152 '7' 'canceled': The job has been canceled by a Cancel-Job operation and the Printer object
 3153 has completed canceling the job and all job status attributes have reached their
 3154 final values for the job. While the Printer object is canceling the job, the job
 3155 remains in its current state, but the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute SHOULD
 3156 contain the 'processing-to-stop-point' value and one of the 'canceled-by-user',
 3157 'canceled-by-operator', or 'canceled-at-device' value. When the job moves to the
 3158 'canceled' state, the 'processing-to-stop-point' value, if present, MUST be
 3159 removed, but the 'canceled-by-xxx', if present, MUST remain.
 3160

3161 '8' 'aborted': The job has been aborted by the system, usually while the job was in the
 3162 'processing' or 'processing-stopped' state and the Printer has completed aborting
 3163 the job and all job status attributes have reached their final values for the job.
 3164 While the Printer object is aborting the job, the job remains in its current state, but
 3165 the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute SHOULD contain the 'processing-to-stop-
 3166 point' and 'aborted-by-system' values. When the job moves to the 'aborted' state,
 3167 the 'processing-to-stop-point' value, if present, MUST be removed, but the
 3168 'aborted-by-system' value, if present, MUST remain.

3170 '9' 'completed': The job has completed successfully or with warnings or errors after
 3171 processing and all of the job media sheets have been successfully stacked in the
 3172 appropriate output bin(s) and all job status attributes have reached their final
 3173 values for the job. The job's "job-state-reasons" attribute SHOULD contain one
 3174 of: 'completed-successfully', 'completed-with-warnings', or 'completed-with-errors'
 3175 values.
 3176

3177 The final value for this attribute MUST be one of: 'completed', 'canceled', or 'aborted' before the Printer
 3178 removes the job altogether. The length of time that jobs remain in the 'canceled', 'aborted', and
 3179 'completed' states depends on implementation. [See section 4.3.7.1.](#)

3180 The following figure shows the normal job state transitions.



3189 Normally a job progresses from left to right. Other state transitions are unlikely, but are not forbidden.
 3190 Not shown are the transitions to the 'canceled' state from the 'pending', 'pending-held', and 'processing-
 3191 stopped' states.

3192 Jobs reach one of the three terminal states: 'completed', 'canceled', or 'aborted', after the jobs have
 3193 completed all activity, including stacking output media, after the jobs have completed all activity, and all
 3194 job status attributes have reached their final values for the job.

3195 Note: As with all other IPP attributes, if the implementation can not determine the correct value for this
 3196 attribute, it SHOULD respond with the out-of-band value 'unknown' (see section 4.1) rather than try to
 3197 guess at some possibly incorrect value and give the end user the wrong impression about the state of the
 3198 Job object. For example, if the implementation is just a gateway into some printing system that does not
 3199 provide detailed status about the print job, the IPP Job object's state might literally be 'unknown'.

3200 4.3.7.1 Partitioning of Job States

3201 This section partitions the 7 job states into phases: Job Not Completed, Job Retention, Job History, and
3202 Job Removal. This section also explains the 'job-restartable' value of the "job-state-reasons" Job
3203 Description attribute for use with the Restart-Job operation.

3204 Job Not Completed: When a job is in the 'pending', 'pending-held', 'processing', or 'processing-stopped'
3205 states, the job is not completed.

3206 Job Retention: When a job enters one of the three terminal job states: 'completed', 'canceled', or
3207 'aborted', the IPP Printer object MAY "retain" the job in a restartable condition for an implementation-
3208 defined time period. This time period MAY be zero seconds and MAY depend on the terminal job state.
3209 This phase is called Job Retention. While in the Job Retention phase, the job's document data is retained
3210 and a client may restart the job using the Restart-Job operation. If the IPP object supports the "job-state-
3211 reasons" attribute and the Restart-Job operation, then it SHOULD indicate that the job is restartable by
3212 adding the 'job-restartable' value to the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute (see Section 4.3.8) during the
3213 Job Retention phase.

3214 Job History: After the Job Retention phase expires for a job, the Printer object deletes the document
3215 data for the job and the job becomes part of the Job History. The Printer object MAY also delete any
3216 number of the job attributes. Since the job is no longer restartable, the Printer object MUST remove the
3217 'job-restartable' value from the job's "job-state-reasons" attribute, if present.

3218 Job Removal: After the job has remained in the Job History for an implementation-defined time, such as
3219 when the number of jobs exceeds a fixed number or after a fixed time period (which MAY be zero
3220 seconds), the IPP Printer removes the job from the system.

3221 Using the Get-Jobs operation and supplying the 'not-completed' value for the "which-jobs" operation
3222 attribute, a client is requesting jobs in the Job Not Completed phase. Using the Get-Jobs operation and
3223 supplying the 'completed' value for the "which-jobs" operation attribute, a client is requesting jobs in the
3224 Job Retention and Job History phases. Using the Get-Job-Attributes operation, a client is requesting a
3225 job in any phase except Job Removal. After Job Removal, the Get-Job-Attributes and Get-Jobs
3226 operations no longer are capable of returning any information about a job.

3227 4.3.8 job-state-reasons (1setOf type2 keyword)

3228 This attribute provides additional information about the job's current state, i.e., information that
3229 augments the value of the job's "job-state" attribute.

3230 Implementation of these values is OPTIONAL, i.e., a Printer NEED NOT implement them, even if (1)
3231 the output device supports the functionality represented by the reason and (2) is available to the Printer
3232 object implementation. These values MAY be used with any job state or states for which the reason
3233 makes sense. Furthermore, when implemented, the Printer MUST return these values when the reason
3234 applies and MUST NOT return them when the reason no longer applies whether the value of the Job's
3235 "job-state" attribute changed or not. When the Job does not have any reasons for being in its current
3236 state, the value of the Job's "job-state-reasons" attribute MUST be 'none'.

3237 Note: While values cannot be added to the 'job-state' attribute without impacting deployed clients that
3238 take actions upon receiving "job-state" values, it is the intent that additional "job-state-reasons" values
3239 can be defined and registered without impacting such deployed clients. In other words, the "job-state-
3240 reasons" attribute is intended to be extensible.

3241 The following standard keyword values are defined. For ease of understanding, the values are presented
3242 in the order in which the reasons are likely to occur (if implemented), starting with the 'job-incoming'
3243 value:

3244 'none': There are no reasons for the job's current state.

3245 'job-incoming': The Create-Job operation has been accepted by the Printer, but the Printer is
3246 expecting additional Send-Document and/or Send-URI operations and/or is accessing/accepting
3247 document data.

3248 'submission-interrupted': The job was not completely submitted for some unforeseen reason, such
3249 as: (1) the Printer has crashed before the job was closed by the client, (2) the Printer or the
3250 document transfer method has crashed in some non-recoverable way before the document data
3251 was entirely transferred to the Printer, (3) the client crashed or failed to close the job before the
3252 time-out period. See section 4.4.28.

3253 'job-outgoing': The Printer is transmitting the job to the output device.

3254 'job-hold-until-specified': The value of the job's "job-hold-until" attribute was specified with a time
3255 period that is still in the future. The job MUST NOT be a candidate for processing until this
3256 reason is removed and there are no other reasons to hold the job.

3257 'resources-are-not-ready': At least one of the resources needed by the job, such as media, fonts,
3258 resource objects, etc., is not ready on any of the physical printer's for which the job is a candidate.
3259 This condition MAY be detected when the job is accepted, or subsequently while the job is
3260 pending or processing, depending on implementation. The job may remain in its current state or
3261 be moved to the 'pending-held' state, depending on implementation and/or job scheduling policy.

3262 'printer-stopped-partly': The value of the Printer's "printer-state-reasons" attribute contains the value
3263 'stopped-partly'.

3264 'printer-stopped': The value of the Printer's "printer-state" attribute is 'stopped'.

3265 'job-interpreting': Job is in the 'processing' state, but more specifically, the Printer is interpreting the
3266 document data.

3267 'job-queued': Job is in the 'processing' state, but more specifically, the Printer has queued the
3268 document data.

3269 'job-transforming': Job is in the 'processing' state, but more specifically, the Printer is interpreting
3270 document data and producing another electronic representation.

3271 'job-printing': The output device is marking media. This value is useful for Printers which spend a
3272 great deal of time processing (1) when no marking is happening and then want to show that
3273 marking is now happening or (2) when the job is in the process of being canceled or aborted
3274 while the job remains in the 'processing' state, but the marking has not yet stopped so that
3275 impression or sheet counts are still increasing for the job.

3276 'job-canceled-by-user': The job was canceled by the owner of the job using the Cancel-Job request,
3277 i.e., by a user whose authenticated identity is the same as the value of the originating user that
3278 created the Job object, or by some other authorized end-user, such as a member of the job
3279 owner's security group.

3280 'job-canceled-by-operator': The job was canceled by the operator using the Cancel-Job request, i.e.,
3281 by a user who has been authenticated as having operator privileges (whether local or remote). If
3282 the security policy is to allow anyone to cancel anyone's job, then this value may be used when
3283 the job is canceled by other than the owner of the job. For such a security policy, in effect,
3284 everyone is an operator as far as canceling jobs with IPP is concerned.
3285 'job-canceled-at-device': The job was canceled by an unidentified local user, i.e., a user at a console
3286 at the device.
3287 'aborted-by-system': The job (1) is in the process of being aborted, (2) has been aborted by the
3288 system and placed in the 'aborted' state, or (3) has been aborted by the system and placed in the
3289 'pending-held' state, so that a user or operator can manually try the job again.
3290 'processing-to-stop-point': The requester has issued a Cancel-job operation or the Printer object has
3291 aborted the job, but is still performing some actions on the job until a specified stop point occurs
3292 or job termination/cleanup is completed.
3293

3294 This reason is recommended to be used in conjunction with the 'processing' job state to indicate
3295 that the Printer object is still performing some actions on the job while the job remains in the
3296 'processing' state. After all the job's job description attributes have stopped incrementing, the
3297 Printer object moves the job from the 'processing' state to the 'canceled' or 'aborted' job states.
3298

3299 'service-off-line': The Printer is off-line and accepting no jobs. All 'pending' jobs are put into the
3300 'pending-held' state. This situation could be true if the service's or document transform's input is
3301 impaired or broken.

3302 'job-completed-successfully': The job completed successfully.

3303 'job-completed-with-warnings': The job completed with warnings.

3304 'job-completed-with-errors': The job completed with errors (and possibly warnings too).

3305 'job-restartable' - This job is retained (see section 4.3.7.1) and is currently able to be restarted using
3306 the Restart-Job operation (see section 3.3.7). The job states for which 'job-restartable' can be
3307 used depends on implementation, i.e., OPTION 1 vs. OPTION 2 in the job state transition table
3308 in Section 3.3.7. If 'job-restartable' is a value of the job's 'job-state-reasons' attribute, then the IPP
3309 object MUST accept a Restart-Job operation for that job.

3310 4.3.9 job-state-message (text(MAX))

3311 This attribute specifies information about the "job-state" and "job-state-reasons" attributes in human
3312 readable text. If the Printer object supports this attribute, the Printer object MUST be able to generate
3313 this message in any of the natural languages identified by the Printer's "generated-natural-language-
3314 supported" attribute (see the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute specified in Section
3315 3.1.4.1).

3316 Note: the value SHOULD NOT contain additional information not contained in the values of the "job-
3317 state" and "job-states-reasons" attributes, such as interpreter error information. Otherwise, application
3318 programs might attempt to parse the (localized text). For such additional information such as interpreter
3319 errors for application program consumption, a new attribute with keyword values, needs to be developed
3320 and registered.

3321 4.3.10 number-of-documents (integer(0:MAX))

3322 This attribute indicates the number of documents in the job, i.e., the number of Send-Document, Send-
3323 URI, Print-Job, or Print-URI operations that the Printer has accepted for this job, regardless of whether
3324 the document data has reached the Printer object or not.

3325 Implementations supporting the OPTIONAL Create-Job/Send-Document/Send-URI operations
3326 SHOULD support this attribute so that clients can query the number of documents in each job.

3327 4.3.11 output-device-assigned (name(127))

3328 This attribute identifies the output device to which the Printer object has assigned this job. If an output
3329 device implements an embedded Printer object, the Printer object NEED NOT set this attribute. If a
3330 print server implements a Printer object, the value MAY be empty (zero-length string) or not returned
3331 until the Printer object assigns an output device to the job. This attribute is particularly useful when a
3332 single Printer object support multiple devices (so called "fan-out").

3333 4.3.12 time-at-creation (integer(0:MAX))

3334 This attribute indicates the point in time at which the Job object was created. In order to populate this
3335 attribute, the Printer object uses the value in its "printer-up-time" attribute at the time the Job object is
3336 created.

3337 4.3.13 time-at-processing (integer(0:MAX))

3338 This attribute indicates the point in time at which the Job object began processing. In order to populate
3339 this attribute, the Printer object uses the value in its "printer-up-time" attribute at the time the Job object
3340 is moved into the 'processing' state for the first time.

3341 4.3.14 time-at-completed (integer(0:MAX))

3342 This attribute indicates the point in time at which the Job object completed (or was cancelled or aborted).
3343 In order to populate this attribute, the Printer object uses the value in its "printer-up-time" attribute at the
3344 time the Job object is moved into the 'completed' or 'canceled' or 'aborted' state.

3345 4.3.15 number-of-intervening-jobs (integer(0:MAX))

3346 This attribute indicates the number of jobs that are "ahead" of this job in the relative chronological order
3347 of expected time to complete (i.e., the current scheduled order). For efficiency, it is only necessary to
3348 calculate this value when an operation is performed that requests this attribute.

3349 4.3.16 job-message-from-operator (text(127))

3350 This attribute provides a message from an operator, system administrator or "intelligent" process to
3351 indicate to the end user the reasons for modification or other management action taken on a job.

3352 4.3.17 job-k-octets (integer(0:MAX))

3353 This attribute specifies the total size of the document(s) in K octets, i.e., in units of 1024 octets requested
3354 to be processed in the job. The value MUST be rounded up, so that a job between 1 and 1024 octets
3355 MUST be indicated as being 1, 1025 to 2048 MUST be 2, etc.

3356 This value MUST NOT include the multiplicative factors contributed by the number of copies specified
3357 by the "copies" attribute, independent of whether the device can process multiple copies without making
3358 multiple passes over the job or document data and independent of whether the output is collated or not.
3359 Thus the value is independent of the implementation and indicates the size of the document(s) measured
3360 in K octets independent of the number of copies.

3361 This value MUST also not include the multiplicative factor due to a copies instruction embedded in the
3362 document data. If the document data actually includes replications of the document data, this value will
3363 include such replication. In other words, this value is always the size of the source document data, rather
3364 than a measure of the hardcopy output to be produced.

3365 Note: This attribute and the following two attributes ("job-impressions" and "job-media-sheets") are not
3366 intended to be counters; they are intended to be useful routing and scheduling information if known. For
3367 these three attributes, the Printer object may try to compute the value if it is not supplied in the create
3368 request. Even if the client does supply a value for these three attributes in the create request, the Printer
3369 object MAY choose to change the value if the Printer object is able to compute a value which is more
3370 accurate than the client supplied value. The Printer object may be able to determine the correct value for
3371 these three attributes either right at job submission time or at any later point in time.

3372 4.3.18 job-impressions (integer(0:MAX))

3373 This attribute specifies the total size in number of impressions of the document(s) being submitted (see
3374 the definition of impression in section 13.2.5).

3375 As with "job-k-octets", this value MUST NOT include the multiplicative factors contributed by the
3376 number of copies specified by the "copies" attribute, independent of whether the device can process
3377 multiple copies without making multiple passes over the job or document data and independent of
3378 whether the output is collated or not. Thus the value is independent of the implementation and reflects
3379 the size of the document(s) measured in impressions independent of the number of copies.

3380 As with "job-k-octets", this value MUST also not include the multiplicative factor due to a copies
3381 instruction embedded in the document data. If the document data actually includes replications of the
3382 document data, this value will include such replication. In other words, this value is always the number
3383 of impressions in the source document data, rather than a measure of the number of impressions to be
3384 produced by the job.

3385 See the Note in the "job-k-octets" attribute that also applies to this attribute.

3386 4.3.19 job-media-sheets (integer(0:MAX))

3387 This attribute specifies the total number of media sheets to be produced for this job.

3388 Unlike the "job-k-octets" and the "job-impressions" attributes, this value MUST include the
3389 multiplicative factors contributed by the number of copies specified by the "copies" attribute and a
3390 'number of copies' instruction embedded in the document data, if any. This difference allows the system
3391 administrator to control the lower and upper bounds of both (1) the size of the document(s) with "job-k-
3392 octets-supported" and "job-impressions-supported" and (2) the size of the job with "job-media-sheets-
3393 supported".

3394 See the Note in the "job-k-octets" attribute that also applies to this attribute.

3395 4.3.20 job-k-octets-processed (integer(0:MAX))

3396 This attribute specifies the total number of octets processed in K octets, i.e., in units of 1024 octets so
3397 far. The value MUST be rounded up, so that a job between 1 and 1024 octets inclusive MUST be
3398 indicated as being 1, 1025 to 2048 inclusive MUST be 2, etc.

3399 For implementations where multiple copies are produced by the interpreter with only a single pass over
3400 the data, the final value MUST be equal to the value of the "job-k-octets" attribute. For implementations
3401 where multiple copies are produced by the interpreter by processing the data for each copy, the final
3402 value MUST be a multiple of the value of the "job-k-octets" attribute.

3403 Note: This attribute and the following two attributes ("job-impressions-completed" and "job-sheets-
3404 completed") are intended to be counters. That is, the value for a job that has not started processing
3405 MUST be 0. When the job's "job-state" is 'processing' or 'processing-stopped', this value is intended to
3406 contain the amount of the job that has been processed to the time at which the attributes are requested.

3407 4.3.21 job-impressions-completed (integer(0:MAX))

3408 This job attribute specifies the number of impressions completed for the job so far. For printing devices,
3409 the impressions completed includes interpreting, marking, and stacking the output.

3410 See the note in "job-k-octets-processed" which also applies to this attribute.

3411 4.3.22 job-media-sheets-completed (integer(0:MAX))

3412 This job attribute specifies the media-sheets completed marking and stacking for the entire job so far
3413 whether those sheets have been processed on one side or on both.

3414 See the note in "job-k-octets-processed" which also applies to this attribute.

3415 4.3.23 attributes-charset (charset)

3416 This REQUIRED attribute is populated using the value in the client supplied "attributes-charset"
3417 attribute in the create request. It identifies the charset (coded character set and encoding method) used
3418 by any Job attributes with attribute syntax 'text' and 'name' that were supplied by the client in the create
3419 request. See Section 3.1.4 for a complete description of the "attributes-charset" operation attribute.

3420 This attribute does not indicate the charset in which the 'text' and 'name' values are stored internally in
3421 the Job object. The internal charset is implementation-defined. The IPP object MUST convert from
3422 whatever the internal charset is to that being requested in an operation as specified in Section 3.1.4.

3423 4.3.24 attributes-natural-language (naturalLanguage)

3424 This REQUIRED attribute is populated using the value in the client supplied "attributes-natural-
3425 language" attribute in the create request. It identifies the natural language used for any Job attributes
3426 with attribute syntax 'text' and 'name' that were supplied by the client in the create request. See Section
3427 3.1.4 for a complete description of the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute. See Sections
3428 4.1.1.2 and 4.1.2.2 for how a Natural Language Override may be supplied explicitly for each 'text' and
3429 'name' attribute value that differs from the value identified by the "attributes-natural-language" attribute.

3430 4.4 Printer Description Attributes

3431 These attributes form the attribute group called "printer-description". The following table summarizes
3432 these attributes, their syntax, and whether or not they are REQUIRED for a Printer object to support. If
3433 they are not indicated as REQUIRED, they are OPTIONAL. The maximum size in octets for 'text' and
3434 'name' attributes is indicated in parentheses.

3435 Note: How these attributes are set by an Administrator is outside the scope of this [IPP/1.1](#)
3436 [specification document](#).

3437	+-----+-----+-----+
3438	Attribute Syntax REQUIRED?
3439	+-----+-----+-----+
3440	printer-uri-supported 1setOf uri REQUIRED
3441	+-----+-----+-----+
3442	uri-security-supported 1setOf type2 keyword REQUIRED
3443	+-----+-----+-----+
3444	printer-name name (127) REQUIRED
3445	+-----+-----+-----+
3446	printer-location text (127)
3447	+-----+-----+-----+
3448	printer-info text (127)
3449	+-----+-----+-----+
3450	printer-more-info uri
3451	+-----+-----+-----+
3452	printer-driver-installer uri
3453	+-----+-----+-----+
3454	printer-make-and-model text (127)
3455	+-----+-----+-----+
3456	printer-more-info-
3457	manufacturer uri
3458	+-----+-----+-----+
3459	printer-state type1 enum REQUIRED
3460	+-----+-----+-----+
3461	printer-state-reasons 1setOf type2 keyword
3462	+-----+-----+-----+
3463	printer-state-message text (MAX)
3464	+-----+-----+-----+
3465	operations-supported 1setOf type2 enum REQUIRED
3466	+-----+-----+-----+
3467	charset-configured charset REQUIRED
3468	+-----+-----+-----+
3469	charset-supported 1setOf charset REQUIRED
3470	+-----+-----+-----+
3471	natural-language-configured naturalLanguage REQUIRED
3472	+-----+-----+-----+
3473	generated-natural-language-
3474	supported 1setOf naturalLanguage REQUIRED
3475	+-----+-----+-----+
3476	document-format-default mimeType REQUIRED
3477	+-----+-----+-----+
3478	document-format-supported 1setOf mimeType REQUIRED
3479	+-----+-----+-----+
3480	printer-is-accepting-jobs boolean REQUIRED
3481	+-----+-----+-----+
3482	queued-job-count integer (0:MAX) RECOMMENDED
3483	+-----+-----+-----+
3484	printer-message-from-
3485	operator text (127)
3486	+-----+-----+-----+

3487	color-supported	boolean		
3488	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3489	reference-uri-schemes-	1setOf uriScheme		
3490	supported			
3491	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3492	pdl-override-supported	type2 keyword		REQUIRED
3493	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3494	printer-up-time	integer (1:MAX)		REQUIRED
3495	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3496	printer-current-time	dateTime		
3497	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3498	multiple-operation-time-out	integer (1:MAX)		
3499	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3500	compression-supported	1setOf type3 keyword		
3501	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3502	job-k-octets-supported	rangeOfInteger (0:MAX)		
3503	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3504	job-impressions-supported	rangeOfInteger (0:MAX)		
3505	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3506	job-media-sheets-supported	rangeOfInteger (0:MAX)		
3507	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3508	<u>pages-per-minute</u>	<u>integer(0:MAX)</u>		
3509	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3510	<u>pages-per-minute-color</u>	<u>integer(0:MAX)</u>		
3511	+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
3512				

3513 4.4.1 printer-uri-supported (1setOf uri)

3514 This REQUIRED Printer attribute contains at least one URI for the Printer object. It OPTIONALLY
 3515 contains more than one URI for the Printer object. An administrator determines a Printer object's
 3516 URI(s) and configures this attribute to contain those URIs by some means outside the scope of [this](#)
 3517 [IPP/4.01.1 document](#). The precise format of this URI is implementation dependent and depends on the
 3518 protocol. See the next section for a description "uri-security-supported" which is the REQUIRED
 3519 companion attribute to this "printer-uri-supported" attribute. See section 2.4 on Printer object identity
 3520 and section 8.2 on security and URIs for more information.

3521 4.4.2 uri-security-supported (1setOf type2 keyword)

3522 This REQUIRED Printer attribute MUST have the same cardinality (contain the same number of values)
 3523 as the "printer-uri-supported" attribute. This attribute identifies the security mechanisms used for each
 3524 URI listed in the "printer-uri-supported" attribute. The "i th" value in "uri-security-supported"
 3525 corresponds to the "i th" value in "printer-uri-supported" and it describes the security mechanisms used
 3526 for accessing the Printer object via that URI. The following standard values are defined:

3527 'none': There are no secure communication channel protocols in use for the given URI.

3528 'ssl3': SSL3 [SSL] is the secure communications channel protocol in use for the given URI. [For use](#)
 3529 [in IPP/1.0.](#)

3530 'tls': TLS [RFC2246] is the secure communications channel protocol in use for the given URI. For
3531 use in IPP/1.1.

3532

3533 Consider the following example. For a single Printer object, an administrator configures the "printer-uri-
3534 supported" and "uri-security-supported" attributes as follows:

3535 "printer-uri-supported": 'http:xxx://acme.com/open-use-printer', 'http:xxx://acme.com/restricted-use-
3536 printer', 'http:xxx://acme.com/private-printer'

3537 "uri-security-supported": 'none', 'none', 'ssl3tls'

3538

3539 Note: 'xxx' is not a valid scheme. See the IPP/1.1 "Transport and Encoding" specification [ipp-pro] for
3540 the actual URI schemes to be used in object target attributes.

3541 In this case, one Printer object has three URIs.

3542 - For the first URI, 'http:xxx://acme.com/open-use-printer', the value 'none' in "uri-security-
3543 supported" indicates that there is no secure channel protocol configured to run under HTTP. The
3544 name implies that there is no Basic or Digest authentication being used, but it is up to the client
3545 to determine that while using HTTP underneath the IPP application protocol.

3546 - For the second URI, 'http:xxx://acme.com/restricted-use-printer', the value 'none' in "uri-security-
3547 supported" indicates that there is no secure channel protocol configured to run under HTTP. In
3548 this case, although the name does imply that there is some sort of Basic or Digest authentication
3549 being used within HTTP, it is up to the client to determine that while using HTTP and by
3550 processing any '401 Unauthorized' HTTP error messages.

3551 - For the third URI, 'http:xxx://acme.com/private-printer', the value 'ssl3tls' in "uri-security-
3552 supported" indicates that **SSL3TLS** is being used to secure the channel. The client SHOULD be
3553 prepared to use **SSL3TLS** framing to negotiate an acceptable ciphersuite to use while
3554 communicating with the Printer object. In this case, the name implies the use of a secure
3555 communications channel, but the fact is made explicit by the presence of the 'ssl3tls' value in
3556 "uri-security-supported". The client does not need to resort to understanding which security it
3557 must use by following naming conventions or by parsing the URI to determine which security
3558 mechanisms are implied.

3559

3560 It is expected that many IPP Printer objects will be configured to support only one channel (either
3561 configured to use **SSL3TLS** access or not), and will therefore only ever have one URI listed in the
3562 "printer-uri-supported" attribute. No matter the configuration of the Printer object (whether it has only
3563 one URI or more than one URI), a client MUST supply only one URI in the target "printer-uri" operation
3564 attribute.

3565 4.4.3 printer-name (name(127))

3566 This REQUIRED Printer attribute contains the name of the Printer object. It is a name that is more end-
3567 user friendly than a URI. An administrator determines a printer's name and sets this attribute to that
3568 name. This name may be the last part of the printer's URI or it may be unrelated. In non-US-English
3569 locales, a name may contain characters that are not allowed in a URI.

3570 4.4.4 printer-location (text(127))

3571 This Printer attribute identifies the location of the device. This could include things like: "in Room
3572 123A, second floor of building XYZ".

3573 4.4.5 printer-info (text(127))

3574 This Printer attribute identifies the descriptive information about this Printer object. This could include
3575 things like: "This printer can be used for printing color transparencies for HR presentations", or "Out of
3576 courtesy for others, please print only small (1-5 page) jobs at this printer", or even "This printer is going
3577 away on July 1, 1997, please find a new printer".

3578 4.4.6 printer-more-info (uri)

3579 This Printer attribute contains a URI used to obtain more information about this specific Printer object.
3580 For example, this could be an HTTP type URI referencing an HTML page accessible to a Web Browser.
3581 The information obtained from this URI is intended for end user consumption. Features outside the
3582 scope of IPP can be accessed from this URI. The information is intended to be specific to this printer
3583 instance and site specific services (e.g. job pricing, services offered, end user assistance). The device
3584 manufacturer may initially populate this attribute.

3585 4.4.7 printer-driver-installer (uri)

3586 This Printer attribute contains a URI to use to locate the driver installer for this Printer object. This
3587 attribute is intended for consumption by automata. The mechanics of print driver installation is outside
3588 the scope of [this IPP/1.1 document](#). The device manufacturer may initially populate this attribute.

3589 4.4.8 printer-make-and-model (text(127))

3590 This Printer attribute identifies the make and model of the device. The device manufacturer may
3591 initially populate this attribute.

3592 4.4.9 printer-more-info-manufacturer (uri)

3593 This Printer attribute contains a URI used to obtain more information about this type of device. The
3594 information obtained from this URI is intended for end user consumption. Features outside the scope of
3595 IPP can be accessed from this URI (e.g., latest firmware, upgrades, print drivers, optional features
3596 available, details on color support). The information is intended to be germane to this printer without
3597 regard to site specific modifications or services. The device manufacturer may initially populate this
3598 attribute.

3599 4.4.10 printer-state (type1 enum)

3600 This REQUIRED Printer attribute identifies the current state of the device. The "printer-state reasons"
 3601 attribute augments the "printer-state" attribute to give more detailed information about the Printer in the
 3602 given printer state.

3603 A Printer object need only update this attribute before responding to an operation which requests the
 3604 attribute; the Printer object NEED NOT update this attribute continually, since asynchronous event
 3605 notification is not part of IPP/1.01.1. A Printer NEED NOT implement all values if they are not
 3606 applicable to a given implementation.

3607 The following standard enum values are defined:

3608	Value	Symbolic Name and Description
3609	'3'	'idle': If a Printer receives a job (whose required resources are ready) while in this state, such a job MUST transit into the 'processing' state immediately. If the "printer-state-reasons" attribute contains any reasons, they MUST be reasons that would not prevent a job from transiting into the 'processing' state immediately, e.g., 'toner-low'. Note: if a Printer controls more than one output device, the above definition implies that a Printer is 'idle' if at least one output device is idle.
3610	'4'	'processing': If a Printer receives a job (whose required resources are ready) while in this state, such a job MUST transit into the 'pending' state immediately. Such a job MUST transit into the 'processing' state only after jobs ahead of it complete. If the "printer-state-reasons" attribute contains any reasons, they MUST be reasons that do not prevent the current job from printing, e.g. 'toner-low'. Note: if a Printer controls more than one output device, the above definition implies that a Printer is 'processing' if at least one output device is processing, and none is idle.
3611	'5'	'stopped': If a Printer receives a job (whose required resources are ready) while in this state, such a job MUST transit into the 'pending' state immediately. Such a job MUST transit into the 'processing' state only after some human fixes the problem that stopped the printer and after jobs ahead of it complete processing. If supported, the "printer-state-reasons" attribute MUST contain at least one reason, e.g. 'media-jam', which prevents it from either processing the current job or transitioning a 'pending' job to the 'processing' state.
3612		Note: if a Printer controls more than one output device, the above definition implies that a Printer is 'stopped' only if all output devices are stopped. Also, it is tempting to define 'stopped' as when a sufficient number of output devices are stopped and leave it to an implementation to define the sufficient number. But such a rule complicates the definition of 'stopped' and 'processing'. For example, with this alternate definition of 'stopped', a job can move from 'pending' to 'processing' without human intervention, even though the Printer is stopped.
3613		
3614		
3615		
3616		
3617		
3618		
3619		
3620		
3621		
3622		
3623		
3624		
3625		
3626		
3627		
3628		
3629		
3630		
3631		
3632		
3633		
3634		
3635		
3636		
3637		
3638		
3639		
3640		

3641 4.4.11 printer-state-reasons (1setOf type2 keyword)

3642 This Printer attribute supplies additional detail about the device's state.

3643 Each keyword value MAY have a suffix to indicate its level of severity. The three levels are: report
3644 (least severe), warning, and error (most severe).

3645 - 'report': This suffix indicates that the reason is a "report". An implementation may choose to omit
3646 some or all reports. Some reports specify finer granularity about the printer state; others serve as
3647 a precursor to a warning. A report MUST contain nothing that could affect the printed output.

3648 - 'warning': This suffix indicates that the reason is a "warning". An implementation may choose to
3649 omit some or all warnings. Warnings serve as a precursor to an error. A warning MUST contain
3650 nothing that prevents a job from completing, though in some cases the output may be of lower
3651 quality.

3652 - 'error': This suffix indicates that the reason is an "error". An implementation MUST include all
3653 errors. If this attribute contains one or more errors, printer MUST be in the stopped state.
3654

3655 If the implementation does not add any one of the three suffixes, all parties MUST assume that the
3656 reason is an "error".

3657 If a Printer object controls more than one output device, each value of this attribute MAY apply to one or
3658 more of the output devices. An error on one output device that does not stop the Printer object as a
3659 whole MAY appear as a warning in the Printer's "printer-state-reasons attribute". If the "printer-state"
3660 for such a Printer has a value of 'stopped', then there MUST be an error reason among the values in the
3661 "printer-state-reasons" attribute.

3662 The following standard keyword values are defined:

3663 'other': The device has detected an error other than one listed in this document.

3664 'none': There are not reasons. This state reason is semantically equivalent to "printer-state-reasons"
3665 without any value.

3666 'media-needed': A tray has run out of media.

3667 'media-jam': The device has a media jam.

3668 'moving-to-paused': Someone has paused the Printer object using the Pause-Printer operation (see
3669 section 3.2.7) or other means, but the device(s) are taking an appreciable time to stop. Later,
3670 when all output has stopped, the "printer-state" becomes 'stopped', and the 'paused' value replaces
3671 the 'moving-to-paused' value in the "printer-state-reasons" attribute.

3672 'paused': Someone has paused the Printer object using the Pause-Printer operation (see section 3.2.7)
3673 or other means and the Printer object's "printer-state" is 'stopped'. In this state, a Printer MUST
3674 NOT produce printed output, but it MUST perform other operations requested by a client. If a
3675 Printer had been printing a job when the Printer was paused, the Printer MUST resume printing
3676 that job when the Printer is no longer paused and leave no evidence in the printed output of such
3677 a pause.

3678 'shutdown': Someone has removed a Printer object from service, and the device may be powered
3679 down or physically removed. In this state, a Printer object MUST NOT produce printed output,
3680 and unless the Printer object is realized by a print server that is still active, the Printer object
3681 MUST perform no other operations requested by a client, including returning this value. If a

3682 Printer object had been printing a job when it was shutdown, the Printer NEED NOT resume
3683 printing that job when the Printer is no longer shutdown. If the Printer resumes printing such a
3684 job, it may leave evidence in the printed output of such a shutdown, e.g. the part printed before
3685 the shutdown may be printed a second time after the shutdown.

3686 'connecting-to-device': The Printer object has scheduled a job on the output device and is in the
3687 process of connecting to a shared network output device (and might not be able to actually start
3688 printing the job for an arbitrarily long time depending on the usage of the output device by other
3689 servers on the network).

3690 'timed-out': The server was able to connect to the output device (or is always connected), but was
3691 unable to get a response from the output device.

3692 'stopping': The Printer object is in the process of stopping the device and will be stopped in a while.
3693 When the device is stopped, the Printer object will change the Printer object's state to 'stopped'.
3694 The 'stopping-warning' reason is never an error, even for a Printer with a single output device.
3695 When an output-device ceases accepting jobs, the Printer will have this reason while the output
3696 device completes printing.

3697 'stopped-partly': When a Printer object controls more than one output device, this reason indicates
3698 that one or more output devices are stopped. If the reason is a report, fewer than half of the
3699 output devices are stopped. If the reason is a warning, fewer than all of the output devices are
3700 stopped.

3701 'toner-low': The device is low on toner.

3702 toner-empty': The device is out of toner.

3703 marker-supply-low': The device is low on marker supply (ink, paint, etc.).

3704 'spool-area-full': The limit of persistent storage allocated for spooling has been reached.

3705 'cover-open': One or more covers on the device are open.

3706 'interlock-open': One or more interlock devices on the printer are unlocked.

3707 'door-open': One or more doors on the device are open.

3708 'input-tray-missing': One or more input trays are not in the device.

3709 'media-low': At least one input tray is low on media.

3710 'media-empty': At least one input tray is empty.

3711 'output-tray-missing': One or more output trays are not in the device

3712 'output-area-almost-full': One or more output area is almost full (e.g. tray, stacker, collator).

3713 'output-area-full': One or more output area is full. (e.g. tray, stacker, collator)

3714 'marker-supply-low': The device is low on at least one marker supply. (e.g. toner, ink, ribbon)

3715 'marker-supply-empty': The device is out of at least one marker supply. (e.g. toner, ink, ribbon)

3716 'marker-waste-almost-full': The device marker supply waste receptacle is almost full.

3717 'marker-waste-full': The device marker supply waste receptacle is full.

3718 'fuser-over-temp': The fuser temperature is above normal.

3719 'fuser-under-temp': The fuser temperature is below normal.

3720 'opc-near-eol': The optical photo conductor is near end of life.

3721 'opc-life-over': The optical photo conductor is no longer functioning.

3722 'developer-low': The device is low on developer.

3723 'developer-empty': The device is out of developer.

3724 'interpreter-resource-unavailable': An interpreter resource is unavailable (i.e. font, form)

3725

3726 4.4.12 printer-state-message (text(MAX))

3727 This Printer attribute specifies the additional information about the printer state and printer state reasons
 3728 in human readable text. If the Printer object supports this attribute, the Printer object MUST be able to
 3729 generate this message in any of the natural languages identified by the Printer's "generated-natural-
 3730 language-supported" attribute (see the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute specified in
 3731 Section 3.1.4.1).

3732 4.4.13 operations-supported (1setOf type2 enum)

3733 This REQUIRED Printer attribute specifies the set of supported operations for this Printer object and
 3734 contained Job objects.

3735 Note: This attribute is encoded as any other enum attribute syntax according to [IPP-PRO] as 32-bits.
 3736 However, all 32-bit enum values for this attribute MUST NOT exceed 0x00008FFF, since these same
 3737 values are also passed in two octets in the "operation-id" parameter (see section 3.1.1) in each Protocol
 3738 request with the two high order octets omitted in order to indicate the operation being performed [IPP-
 3739 PRO].

3740 The following standard enum and "operation-id" (see section 3.1.2) values are defined:

3741	Value	Operation Name
3742	-----	-----
3743		
3744	0x0000	reserved, not used
3745	0x0001	reserved, not used
3746	0x0002	Print-Job
3747	0x0003	Print-URI
3748	0x0004	Validate-Job
3749	0x0005	Create-Job
3750	0x0006	Send-Document
3751	0x0007	Send-URI
3752	0x0008	Cancel-Job
3753	0x0009	Get-Job-Attributes
3754	0x000A	Get-Jobs
3755	0x000B	Get-Printer-Attributes
3756	<u>0x000C</u>	<u>Hold-Job</u>
3757	<u>0x000D</u>	<u>Release-Job</u>
3758	<u>0x000E</u>	<u>Restart-Job</u>
3759	<u>0x000F</u>	<u>reserved for a future operation</u>
3760	<u>0x0010</u>	<u>Pause-Printer</u>
3761	<u>0x0011</u>	<u>Resume-Printer</u>
3762	<u>0x0012</u>	<u>Purge-Jobs</u>
3763	0x0013-0x3FFF	reserved for future operations
3764	0x4000-0x8FFF	reserved for private extensions
3765		

3766 This allows for certain vendors to implement private extensions that are guaranteed to not conflict with
3767 future registered extensions. However, there is no guarantee that two or more private extensions will not
3768 conflict.

3769 4.4.14 charset-configured (charset)

3770 This REQUIRED Printer attribute identifies the charset that the Printer object has been configured to
3771 represent 'text' and 'name' Printer attributes that are set by the operator, system administrator, or
3772 manufacturer, i.e., for "printer-name" (name), "printer-location" (text), "printer-info" (text), and "printer-
3773 make-and-model" (text). Therefore, the value of the Printer object's "charset-configured" attribute
3774 MUST also be among the values of the Printer object's "charset-supported" attribute.

3775 4.4.15 charset-supported (1setOf charset)

3776 This REQUIRED Printer attribute identifies the set of charsets that the Printer and contained Job objects
3777 support in attributes with attribute syntax 'text' and 'name'. At least the value 'utf-8' MUST be present,
3778 since IPP objects MUST support the UTF-8 [RFC20442279] charset. If a Printer object supports a
3779 charset, it means that for all attributes of syntax 'text' and 'name' the IPP object MUST (1) accept the
3780 charset in requests and return the charset in responses as needed.

3781 If more charsets than UTF-8 are supported, the IPP object MUST perform charset conversion between
3782 the charsets as described in Section 3.2.1.2.

3783 4.4.16 natural-language-configured (naturalLanguage)

3784 This REQUIRED Printer attribute identifies the natural language that the Printer object has been
3785 configured to represent 'text' and 'name' Printer attributes that are set by the operator, system
3786 administrator, or manufacturer, i.e., for "printer-name" (name), "printer-location" (text), "printer-info"
3787 (text), and "printer-make-and-model" (text). When returning these Printer attributes, the Printer object
3788 MAY return them in the configured natural language specified by this attribute, instead of the natural
3789 language requested by the client in the "attributes-natural-language" operation attribute. See Section
3790 3.1.4.1 for the specification of the OPTIONAL multiple natural language support. Therefore, the value
3791 of the Printer object's "natural-language-configured" attribute MUST also be among the values of the
3792 Printer object's "generated-natural-language-supported" attribute.

3793 4.4.17 generated-natural-language-supported (1setOf naturalLanguage)

3794 This REQUIRED Printer attribute identifies the natural language(s) that the Printer object and contained
3795 Job objects support in attributes with attribute syntax 'text' and 'name'. The natural language(s)
3796 supported depends on implementation and/or configuration. Unlike charsets, IPP objects MUST accept
3797 requests with any natural language or any Natural Language Override whether the natural language is
3798 supported or not.

3799 If a Printer object supports a natural language, it means that for any of the attributes for which the Printer
3800 or Job object generates messages, i.e., for the "job-state-message" and "printer-state-message" attributes

3801 and Operation Messages (see Section 3.1.5) in operation responses, the Printer and Job objects MUST be
3802 able to generate messages in any of the Printer's supported natural languages. See section 3.1.4 for the
3803 specification of 'text' and 'name' attributes in operation requests and responses.

3804 Note: A Printer object that supports multiple natural languages, often has separate catalogs of messages,
3805 one for each natural language supported.

3806 4.4.18 document-format-default (mimeMediaType)

3807 This REQUIRED Printer attribute identifies the document format that the Printer object has been
3808 configured to assume if the client does not supply a "document-format" operation attribute in any of the
3809 operation requests that supply document data. The standard values for this attribute are Internet Media
3810 types (sometimes called MIME types). For further details see the description of the 'mimeMediaType'
3811 attribute syntax in Section 4.1.9.

3812 4.4.19 document-format-supported (1setOf mimeMediaType)

3813 This REQUIRED Printer attribute identifies the set of document formats that the Printer object and
3814 contained Job objects can support. For further details see the description of the 'mimeMediaType'
3815 attribute syntax in Section 4.1.9.

3816 4.4.20 printer-is-accepting-jobs (boolean)

3817 This REQUIRED Printer attribute indicates whether the printer is currently able to accept jobs, i.e., is
3818 accepting Print-Job, Print-URI, and Create-Job requests. If the value is 'true', the printer is accepting
3819 jobs. If the value is 'false', the Printer object is currently rejecting any jobs submitted to it. In this case,
3820 the Printer object returns the 'server-error-not-accepting-jobs' status code.

3821 Note: This value is independent of the "printer-state" and "printer-state-reasons" attributes because its
3822 value does not affect the current job; rather it affects future jobs. This attribute may cause the Printer to
3823 reject jobs when the "printer-state" is 'idle' or it may cause the Printer object to accept jobs when the
3824 "printer-state" is 'stopped'.

3825 4.4.21 queued-job-count (integer(0:MAX))

3826 This RECOMMENDED Printer attribute contains a count of the number of jobs that are either 'pending',
3827 'processing', 'pending-held', or 'processing-stopped' and is set by the Printer object.

3828 4.4.22 printer-message-from-operator (text(127))

3829 This Printer attribute provides a message from an operator, system administrator or "intelligent" process
3830 to indicate to the end user information or status of the printer, such as why it is unavailable or when it is
3831 expected to be available.

3832 4.4.23 color-supported (boolean)

3833 This Printer attribute identifies whether the device is capable of any type of color printing at all,
3834 including highlight color. All document instructions having to do with color are embedded within the
3835 document PDL (none are external IPP attributes in IPP/4.01.1).

3836 Note: end-users are able to determine the nature and details of the color support by querying the
3837 "printer-more-info-manufacturer" Printer attribute.

3838 4.4.24 reference-uri-schemes-supported (1setOf uriScheme)

3839 This Printer attribute specifies which URI schemes are supported for use in the "document-uri" operation
3840 attribute of the Print-URI or Send-URI operation. If a Printer object supports these optional operations,
3841 it MUST support the "reference-uri-schemes-supported" Printer attribute with at least the following
3842 schemed URI value:

3843 'ftp': The Printer object will use an FTP 'get' operation as defined in RFC 2228 [RFC2228] using
3844 FTP URLs as defined by [RFC2396] and[RFC2316].
3845

3846 The Printer object MAY OPTIONALLY support other URI schemes (see section 4.1.6).

3847 4.4.25 pdl-override-supported (type2 keyword)

3848 This REQUIRED Printer attribute expresses the ability for a particular Printer implementation to either
3849 attempt to override document data instructions with IPP attributes or not.

3850 This attribute takes on the following values:

- 3851 - 'attempted': This value indicates that the Printer object attempts to make the IPP attribute values
3852 take precedence over embedded instructions in the document data, however there is no guarantee.
- 3853 - 'not-attempted': This value indicates that the Printer object makes no attempt to make the IPP
3854 attribute values take precedence over embedded instructions in the document data.
3855

3856 Section 16 contains a full description of how this attribute interacts with and affects other IPP attributes,
3857 especially the "ipp-attribute-fidelity" attribute.

3858 4.4.26 printer-up-time (integer(1:MAX))

3859 This REQUIRED Printer attribute indicates the amount of time (in seconds) that this instance of this
3860 Printer implementation has been up and running. This value is used to populate the Job attributes "time-
3861 at-creation", "time-at-processing", and "time-at-completed". These time values are all measured in
3862 seconds and all have meaning only relative to this attribute, "printer-up-time". The value is a
3863 monotonically increasing value starting from 1 when the Printer object is started-up (initialized, booted,
3864 etc.).

3865 If the Printer object goes down at some value 'n', and comes back up, the implementation MAY:

- 3866 1. Know how long it has been down, and resume at some value greater than 'n', or
3867 2. Restart from 1.
3868

3869 In the first case, the Printer SHOULD not tweak any existing related Job attributes ("time-at-creation",
3870 "time-at-processing", and "time-at-completed"). In the second case, the Printer object SHOULD reset
3871 those attributes to 0. If a client queries a time-related Job attribute and finds the value to be 0, the client
3872 MUST assume that the Job was submitted in some life other than the Printer's current life.

3873 4.4.27 printer-current-time (dateTime)

3874 This Printer attribute indicates the current absolute wall-clock time. If an implementation supports this
3875 attribute, then a client could calculate the absolute wall-clock time each Job's "time-at-creation", "time-
3876 at-processing", and "time-at-completed" attributes by using both "printer-up-time" and this attribute,
3877 "printer-current-time". If an implementation does not support this attribute, a client can only calculate
3878 the relative time of certain events based on the REQUIRED "printer-up-time" attribute.

3879 4.4.28 multiple-operation-time-out (integer(1:MAX))

3880 This Printer attributes identifies the minimum time (in seconds) that the Printer object waits for
3881 additional Send-Document or Send-URI operations to follow a still-open multi-document Job object
3882 before taking any recovery actions, such as the ones indicated in section 3.3.1. If the Printer object
3883 supports the Create-Job operation (see section 3.2.4), it MUST support this attribute.

3884 It is RECOMMENDED that vendors supply a value for this attribute that is between 60 and 240
3885 seconds. An implementation MAY allow a system administrator to set this attribute (by means outside
3886 this IPP/1.1 document). If so, the system administrator MAY be able to set values outside this range.

3887 4.4.29 compression-supported (1setOf type3 keyword)

3888 This Printer attribute identifies the set of supported compression algorithms for document data.
3889 Compression only applies to the document data; compression does not apply to the encoding of the IPP
3890 operation itself. The supported values are used to validate the client supplied "compression" operation
3891 attributes in Print-Job, Send-Document, and Send-URI requests.

3892 Standard values are :

- 3893 'none': no compression is used.
3894 'deflate': ZIP public domain inflate/deflate) compression technology
3895 'gzip' GNU zip compression technology described in RFC 1952 [RFC1952].
3896 'compress': UNIX compression technology
3897

3898 4.4.30 job-k-octets-supported (rangeOfInteger(0:MAX))

3899 This Printer attribute specifies the upper and lower bounds of total sizes of jobs in K octets, i.e., in units
3900 of 1024 octets. The supported values are used to validate the client supplied "job-k-octets" operation

3901 attributes in create requests. The corresponding job description attribute "job-k-octets" is defined in
3902 section 4.3.17.

3903 4.4.31 job-impressions-supported (rangeOfInteger(0:MAX))

3904 This Printer attribute specifies the upper and lower bounds for the number of impressions per job. The
3905 supported values are used to validate the client supplied "job-impressions" operation attributes in create
3906 requests. The corresponding job description attribute "job-impressions" is defined in section 4.3.18.

3907 4.4.32 job-media-sheets-supported (rangeOfInteger(0:MAX))

3908 This Printer attribute specifies the upper and lower bounds for the number of media sheets per job. The
3909 supported values are used to validate the client supplied "job-media-sheets" operation attributes in create
3910 requests. The corresponding Job attribute "job-media-sheets" is defined in section 4.3.19.

3911 4.4.33 pages-per-minute (integer(0:MAX))

3912 This Printer attributes specifies the nominal number of pages per minute to the nearest whole number
3913 which may be generated by this printer (e.g., simplex, black-and-white). This attribute is informative,
3914 not a service guarantee. Generally, it is the value used in the marketing literature to describe the device.

3915 A value of 0 indicates a device that takes more than two minutes to process a page.

3916 4.4.34 pages-per-minute-color (integer(0:MAX))

3917 This Printer attributes specifies the nominal number of pages per minute to the nearest whole number
3918 which may be generated by this printer when printing color (e.g., simplex, color). For purposes of this
3919 attribute, "color" means the same as for the "color-supported" attribute, namely, the device is capable of
3920 any type of color printing at all, including highlight color. This attribute is informative, not a service
3921 guarantee. Generally, it is the value used in the marketing literature to describe the color capabilities of
3922 this device.

3923 A value of 0 indicates a device that takes more than two minutes to process a page.

3924 Note: If a color device has several color modes, it MAY use the pages-per-minute value for this
3925 attribute that corresponds to the mode that produces the highest number.

3926 Black and white only printers MUST NOT support this attribute. If this attribute is present, then the
3927 "color-supported" Printer description attribute MUST be present and have a 'true' value.

3928 Note: The values of these two attributes returned by the Get-Printer-Attributes operation MAY be
3929 affected by the "document-format" attribute supplied by the client in the Get-Printer-Attributes request.
3930 In other words, the implementation MAY have different speeds depending on the document format
3931 being processed. See section 3.2.5.1 Get-Printer-Attributes.

3932 5. Conformance

3933 This section describes conformance issues and requirements. This document introduces model entities
3934 such as objects, operations, attributes, attribute syntaxes, and attribute values. These conformance
3935 sections describe the conformance requirements which apply to these model entities.

3936 5.1 Client Conformance Requirements

3937 A conforming client **MUST** support all **REQUIRED** operations as defined in this document. For each
3938 attribute included in an operation request, a conforming client **MUST** supply a value whose type and
3939 value syntax conforms to the requirements of the Model document as specified in Sections 3 and 3.3.5.
3940 A conforming client **MAY** supply any registered extensions and/or private extensions in an operation
3941 request, as long as they meet the requirements in Section 6.

3942 Otherwise, there are no conformance requirements placed on the user interfaces provided by IPP clients
3943 or their applications. For example, one application might not allow an end user to submit multiple
3944 documents per job, while another does. One application might first query a Printer object in order to
3945 supply a graphical user interface (GUI) dialogue box with supported and default values whereas a
3946 different implementation might not.

3947 When sending a request, an IPP client **NEED NOT** supply any attributes that are indicated as
3948 **OPTIONALLY** supplied by the client.

3949 A client **MUST** be able to accept any of the attribute syntaxes defined in Section 4.1, including their full
3950 range, that may be returned to it in a response from a Printer object. In particular for each attribute that
3951 the client supports whose attribute syntax is 'text', the client **MUST** accept and process both the
3952 'textWithoutLanguage' and 'textWithLanguage' forms. Similarly, for each attribute that the client
3953 supports whose attribute syntax is 'name', the client **MUST** accept and process both the
3954 'nameWithoutLanguage' and 'nameWithLanguage' forms. For presentation purposes, truncation of long
3955 attribute values is not recommended. A recommended approach would be for the client implementation
3956 to allow the user to scroll through long attribute values.

3957 A query response may contain attribute groups, attributes, and values that the client does not expect.
3958 Therefore, a client implementation **MUST** gracefully handle such responses and not refuse to inter-
3959 operate with a conforming Printer that is returning extended registered or private attributes and/or
3960 attribute values that conform to Section 6. Clients may choose to ignore any parameters, attributes, or
3961 values that they do not understand.

3962 5.2 IPP Object Conformance Requirements

3963 This section specifies the conformance requirements for conforming implementations with respect to
3964 objects, operations, and attributes.

3965 5.2.1 Objects

3966 Conforming implementations MUST implement all of the model objects as defined in this specification
3967 in the indicated sections:

3968 Section 2.1 - Printer Object

3969 Section 2.2 - Job Object

3970

3971 5.2.2 Operations

3972 Conforming IPP object implementations MUST implement all of the REQUIRED model operations,
3973 including REQUIRED responses, as defined in this specification in the indicated sections:

3974 For a Printer object:

3975 Print-Job (section 3.2.1) REQUIRED

3976 Print-URI (section 3.2.2) OPTIONAL

3977 Validate-Job (section 3.2.3) REQUIRED

3978 Create-Job (section 3.2.4) OPTIONAL

3979 Get-Printer-Attributes (section 3.2.5) REQUIRED

3980 Get-Jobs (section 3.2.6) REQUIRED

3981 Pause-Printer (section 3.2.7) OPTIONAL

3982 Resume-Printer (section 3.2.8) OPTIONAL

3983 Purge-Jobs (section 3.2.9) OPTIONAL

3984

3985 For a Job object:

3986 Send-Document (section 3.3.1) OPTIONAL

3987 Send-URI (section 3.3.2) OPTIONAL

3988 Cancel-Job (section 3.3.3) REQUIRED

3989 Get-Job-Attributes (section 3.3.4) REQUIRED

3990 Hold-Job (section 3.3.5) OPTIONAL

3991 Release-Job (section 3.3.6) OPTIONAL

3992 Restart-Job (section 3.3.7) OPTIONAL

3993

3994 Conforming IPP objects MUST support all REQUIRED operation attributes and all values of such
3995 attributes if so indicated in the description. Conforming IPP objects MUST ignore all unsupported or
3996 unknown operation attributes or operation attribute groups received in a request, but MUST reject a
3997 request that contains a supported operation attribute that contains an unsupported value.

3998 The following section on object attributes specifies the support required for object attributes.

3999 5.2.3 IPP Object Attributes

4000 Conforming IPP objects MUST support all of the REQUIRED object attributes, as defined in this
4001 specification in the indicated sections.

4002 If an object supports an attribute, it MUST support only those values specified in this document or
4003 through the extension mechanism described in section 5.2.4. It MAY support any non-empty subset of
4004 these values. That is, it MUST support at least one of the specified values and at most all of them.

4005 5.2.4 Versions

4006 Clients MUST support version 1.1 and MAY also support version 1.0. IPP objects MUST support both
4007 version 1.0 and 1.1. See section 3.1.7.

4008 5.2.5 Extensions

4009 A conforming IPP object MAY support registered extensions and private extensions, as long as they
4010 meet the requirements specified in Section 6.

4011 For each attribute included in an operation response, a conforming IPP object MUST return a value
4012 whose type and value syntax conforms to the requirement of the Model document as specified in
4013 Sections 3 and 3.3.5.

4014 5.2.6 Attribute Syntaxes

4015 An IPP object MUST be able to accept any of the attribute syntaxes defined in Section 4.1, including
4016 their full range, in any operation in which a client may supply attributes or the system administrator may
4017 configure attributes (by means outside the scope of [this IPP/4.01.1 document](#)). In particular for each
4018 attribute that the IPP object supports whose attribute syntax is 'text', the IPP object MUST accept and
4019 process both the 'textWithoutLanguage' and 'textWithLanguage' forms. Similarly, for each attribute that
4020 the IPP object supports whose attribute syntax is 'name', the IPP object MUST accept and process both
4021 the 'nameWithoutLanguage' and 'nameWithLanguage' forms. Furthermore, an IPP object MUST return
4022 attributes to the client in operation responses that conform to the syntax specified in Section 4.1,
4023 including their full range if supplied previously by a client.

4024 5.3 Charset and Natural Language Requirements

4025 All clients and IPP objects MUST support the 'utf-8' charset as defined in section 4.1.7.

4026 IPP objects MUST be able to accept any client request which correctly uses the "attributes-natural-
4027 language" operation attribute or the Natural Language Override mechanism on any individual attribute
4028 whether or not the natural language is supported by the IPP object. If an IPP object supports a natural
4029 language, then it MUST be able to translate (perhaps by table lookup) all generated 'text' or 'name'
4030 attribute values into one of the supported languages (see section 3.1.4). That is, the IPP object that
4031 supports a natural language NEED NOT be a general purpose translator of any arbitrary 'text' or 'name'
4032 value supplied by the client into that natural language. However, the object MUST be able to translate
4033 (automatically generate) any of its own attribute values and messages into that natural language.

4034 5.4 Security Conformance Requirements

4035 Conforming IPP Printer objects ~~MAY~~SHOULD support Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol
4036 ~~Secure Socket Layer~~ Version 1.3 (SSL3/TLS) [SSLRFC2246] access, MAY support access without
4037 SSL3/TLS, or MAY support both means of access.

4038 Conforming IPP clients SHOULD support SSL3/TLS access and non-SSL3/TLS access. Note: This client
4039 requirement recommendation to support both means that conforming IPP clients will be able to inter-
4040 operate with any IPP Printer object.

4041 For a detailed discussion of security considerations and the IPP application security profile required for
4042 SSL3/TLS support, see section 8.

4043 6. IANA Considerations (registered and private extensions)

4044 This section describes how IPP can be extended to allow the following registered and private extensions
4045 to IPP:

- 4046 1. keyword attribute values
- 4047 2. enum attribute values
- 4048 3. attributes
- 4049 4. attribute syntaxes
- 4050 5. operations
- 4051 6. attribute groups
- 4052 7. status codes

4053

4054 Extensions registered for use with IPP/4.01.1 are OPTIONAL for client and IPP object conformance to
4055 the IPP/4.01.1 Model specification.

4056 These extension procedures are aligned with the guidelines as set forth by the IESG [IANA-CON].
4057 Section 12 describes how to propose new registrations for consideration. IANA will reject registration
4058 proposals that leave out required information or do not follow the appropriate format described in
4059 Section 12. IPP/4.01.1 may also be extended by an appropriate RFC that specifies any of the above
4060 extensions.

4061 6.1 Typed 'keyword' and 'enum' Extensions

4062 IPP allows for 'keyword' and 'enum' extensions (see sections 4.1.2.3 and 4.1.4). This document uses
4063 prefixes to the 'keyword' and 'enum' basic attribute syntax type in order to communicate extra
4064 information to the reader through its name. This extra information is not represented in the protocol
4065 because it is unimportant to a client or Printer object. The list below describes the prefixes and their
4066 meaning.

4067 "type1": The IPP specification must be revised to add a new keyword or a new enum. No private
4068 keywords or enums are allowed.

4069
4070 "type2": Implementers can, at any time, add new keyword or enum values by proposing the
4071 complete specification to IANA:

4072
4073 iana@iana.org

4074
4075 IANA will forward the registration proposal to the IPP Designated Expert who will review the
4076 proposal with a mailing list that the Designated Expert keeps for this purpose. Initially, that list
4077 will be the mailing list used by the IPP WG:

4078
4079 ipp@pwg.org

4080
4081 even after the IPP WG is disbanded as permitted by [IANA-CON]. The IPP Designated Expert
4082 is appointed by the IESG Area Director responsible for IPP, according to [IANA-CON].

4083
4084 When a type2 keyword or enum is approved, the IPP Designated Expert becomes the point of
4085 contact for any future maintenance that might be required for that registration.

4086
4087 "type3": Implementers can, at any time, add new keyword and enum values by submitting the
4088 complete specification to IANA as for type2 who will forward the proposal to the IPP Designated
4089 Expert. While no additional technical review is required, the IPP Designated Expert may, at
4090 his/her discretion, forward the proposal to the same mailing list as for type2 registrations for
4091 advice and comment.

4092
4093 When a type3 keyword or enum is approved by the IPP Designated Expert, the original proposer
4094 becomes the point of contact for any future maintenance that might be required for that
4095 registration.

4096
4097 For type2 and type3 keywords, the proposer includes the name of the keyword in the registration
4098 proposal and the name is part of the technical review.

4099 After type2 and type3 enums specifications are approved, the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with
4100 IANA assigns the next available enum number for each enum value.

4101 IANA will publish approved type2 and type3 keyword and enum attributes value registration
4102 specifications in:

4103 ftp.isi.edu/iana/assignments/ipp/attribute-values/xxx/yyy.txt

4104 where xxx is the attribute name that specifies the initial values and yyy.txt is a descriptive file name that
4105 contains one or more enums or keywords approved at the same time. For example, if several additional
4106 enums for stapling are approved for use with the "finishings" attribute (and "finishings-default" and
4107 "finishings-supported" attributes), IANA will publish the additional values in the file:

4108 ftp.isi.edu/iana/assignments/ipp/attribute-values/finishings/stapling.txt.

4109 Note: Some attributes are defined to be: 'type3 keywords' | 'name' which allows for attribute values to be
4110 extended by a site administrator with administrator defined names. Such names are not registered with
4111 IANA.

4112 By definition, each of the three types above assert some sort of registry or review process in order for
4113 extensions to be considered valid. Each higher numbered level (1, 2, 3) tends to be decreasingly less
4114 stringent than the previous level. Therefore, any typeN value MAY be registered using a process for
4115 some typeM where M is less than N, however such registration is NOT REQUIRED. For example, a
4116 type3 value MAY be registered in a type 1 manner (by being included in a future version of an IPP
4117 specification), however, it is NOT REQUIRED.

4118 This specification defines keyword and enum values for all of the above types, including type3
4119 keywords.

4120 For private (unregistered) keyword extensions, implementers SHOULD use keywords with a suitable
4121 distinguishing prefix, such as "xxx-" where xxx is the (lowercase) fully qualified company name
4122 registered with IANA for use in domain names [RFC1035]. For example, if the company XYZ Corp.
4123 had obtained the domain name "XYZ.com", then a private keyword 'abc' would be: 'xyz.com-abc'.

4124 Note: RFC 1035 [RFC1035] indicates that while upper and lower case letters are allowed in domain
4125 names, no significance is attached to the case. That is, two names with the same spelling but different
4126 case are to be treated as if identical. Also, the labels in a domain name must follow the rules for
4127 ARPANET host names: They must start with a letter, end with a letter or digit, and have as interior
4128 characters only letters, digits, and hyphen. Labels must be 63 characters or less. Labels are separated by
4129 the "." character.

4130 For private (unregistered) enum extension, implementers MUST use values in the reserved integer range
4131 which is $2^{*}30$ to $2^{*}31-1$.

4132 6.2 Attribute Extensibility

4133 Attribute names are type2 keywords. Therefore, new attributes may be registered and have the same
4134 status as attributes in this document by following the type2 extension rules. For private (unregistered)
4135 attribute extensions, implementers SHOULD use keywords with a suitable distinguishing prefix as
4136 described in Section 6.1.

4137 IANA will publish approved attribute registration specifications as separate files:

4138 ftp.isi.edu/iana/assignments/ipp/attributes/xxx-yyy.txt

4139 where "xxx-yyy" is the new attribute name.

4140 If a new Printer object attribute is defined and its values can be affected by a specific document format,
4141 its specification needs to contain the following sentence:

4142 "The value of this attribute returned in a Get-Printer-Attributes response MAY depend on the
4143 "document-format" attribute supplied (see Section 3.2.5.1)."

4144 If the specification does not, then its value in the Get-Printer-Attributes response MUST NOT depend on
4145 the "document-format" supplied in the request. When a new Job Template attribute is registered, the
4146 value of the Printer attributes MAY vary with "document-format" supplied in the request without the
4147 specification having to indicate so.

4148 6.3 Attribute Syntax Extensibility

4149 Attribute syntaxes are like type2 enums. Therefore, new attribute syntaxes may be registered and have
4150 the same status as attribute syntaxes in this document by following the type2 extension rules described in
4151 Section 6.1. The value codes that identify each of the attribute syntaxes are assigned in the "Encoding
4152 and Transport" specification [IPP-PRO], including a designated range for private, experimental use.

4153 For attribute syntaxes, the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA assigns the next attribute
4154 syntax code in the appropriate range as specified in [IPP-PRO]. IANA will publish approved attribute
4155 syntax registration specifications as separate files:

4156 ftp.isi.edu/iana/assignments/ipp/attribute-syntaxes/xxx-yyy.txt

4157 where 'xxx-yyy' is the new attribute syntax name.

4158 6.4 Operation Extensibility

4159 Operations may also be registered following the type2 procedures described in Section 6.1, though major
4160 new operations will usually be done by a new standards track RFC that augments this document. For
4161 private (unregistered) operation extensions, implementers MUST use the range for the "operation-id" in
4162 requests specified in Section 4.4.13 "operations-supported" Printer attribute.

4163 For operations, the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA assigns the next operation-id code
4164 as specified in Section 4.4.13. IANA will publish approved operation registration specifications as
4165 separate files:

4166 ftp.isi.edu/iana/assignments/ipp/operations/Xxx-Yyy.txt

4167 where "Xxx-Yyy" is the new operation name.

4168 6.5 Attribute Groups

4169 Attribute groups passed in requests and responses may be registered following the type2 procedures
4170 described in Section 6.1. The tags that identify each of the attribute groups are assigned in [IPP-PRO].

4171 For attribute groups, the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA assigns the next attribute
4172 group tag code in the appropriate range as specified in [IPP-PRO]. IANA will publish approved
4173 attribute group registration specifications as separate files:

4174 `ftp.isi.edu/iana/assignments/ipp/attribute-group-tags/xxx-yyy-tag.txt`

4175 where 'xxx-yyy-tag' is the new attribute group tag name.

4176 6.6 Status Code Extensibility

4177 Operation status codes may also be registered following the type2 procedures described in Section 6.1.
4178 The values for status codes are allocated in ranges as specified in Section 14 for each status code class:

4179 "informational" - Request received, continuing process

4180 "successful" - The action was successfully received, understood, and accepted

4181 "redirection" - Further action must be taken in order to complete the request

4182 "client-error" - The request contains bad syntax or cannot be fulfilled

4183 "server-error" - The IPP object failed to fulfill an apparently valid request

4184

4185 For private (unregistered) operation status code extensions, implementers MUST use the top of each
4186 range as specified in Section 14.

4187 For operation status codes, the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA assigns the next status
4188 code in the appropriate class range as specified in Section 14. IANA will publish approved status code
4189 registration specifications as separate files:

4190 `ftp.isi.edu/iana/assignments/ipp/status-codes/xxx-yyy.txt`

4191 where "xxx-yyy" is the new operation status code keyword.

4192 6.7 Registration of MIME types/sub-types for document-formats

4193 The "document-format" attribute's syntax is 'mimeMediaType'. This means that valid values are Internet
4194 Media Types (see Section 4.1.9). RFC 2045 [RFC2045] defines the syntax for valid Internet media
4195 types. IANA is the registry for all Internet media types.

4196 6.8 Registration of charsets for use in 'charset' attribute values

4197 The "attributes-charset" attribute's syntax is 'charset'. This means that valid values are charsets names.
4198 When a charset in the IANA registry has more than one name (alias), the name labeled as "(preferred
4199 MIME name)", if present, MUST be used (see Section 4.1.7). IANA is the registry for charsets
4200 following the procedures of [RFC2278].

4201 7. Internationalization Considerations

4202 Some of the attributes have values that are text strings and names which are intended for human
4203 understanding rather than machine understanding (see the 'text' and 'name' attribute syntaxes in Sections
4204 4.1.1 and 4.1.2).

4205 In each operation request, the client

- 4206 - identifies the charset and natural language of the request which affects each supplied 'text' and
 - 4207 'name' attribute value, and
 - 4208 - requests the charset and natural language for attributes returned by the IPP object in operation
 - 4209 responses (as described in Section 3.1.4.1).
- 4210

4211 In addition, the client MAY separately and individually identify the Natural Language Override of a
4212 supplied 'text' or 'name' attribute using the 'textWithLanguage' and 'nameWithLanguage' technique
4213 described section 4.1.1.2 and 4.1.2.2 respectively.

4214 All IPP objects MUST support the UTF-8 [RFC20442279] charset in all 'text' and 'name' attributes
4215 supported. If an IPP object supports more than the UTF-8 charset, the object MUST convert between
4216 them in order to return the requested charset to the client according to Section 3.1.4.2. If an IPP object
4217 supports more than one natural language, the object SHOULD return 'text' and 'name' values in the
4218 natural language requested where those values are generated by the Printer (see Section 3.1.4.1).

4219 For Printers that support multiple charsets and/or multiple natural languages in 'text' and 'name'
4220 attributes, different jobs may have been submitted in differing charsets and/or natural languages. All
4221 responses MUST be returned in the charset requested by the client. However, the Get-Jobs operation
4222 uses the 'textWithLanguage' and 'nameWithLanguage' mechanism to identify the differing natural
4223 languages with each job attribute returned.

4224 The Printer object also has configured charset and natural language attributes. The client can query the
4225 Printer object to determine the list of charsets and natural languages supported by the Printer object and
4226 what the Printer object's configured values are. See the "charset-configured", "charset-supported",
4227 "natural-language-configured", and "generated-natural-language-supported" Printer description attributes
4228 for more details.

4229 The "charset-supported" attributed identifies the supported charsets. If a charset is supported, the IPP
4230 object MUST be capable of converting to and from that charset into any other supported charset. In
4231 many cases, an IPP object will support only one charset and it MUST be the UTF-8 charset.

4232 The "charset-configured" attribute identifies the one supported charset which is the native charset given
4233 the current configuration of the IPP object (administrator defined).

4234 The "generated-natural-language-supported" attribute identifies the set of supported natural languages
4235 for generated messages; it is not related to the set of natural languages that must be accepted for client
4236 supplied 'text' and 'name' attributes. For client supplied 'text' and 'name' attributes, an IPP object MUST
4237 accept ALL supplied natural languages. Just because a Printer object is currently configured to support

4238 'en-us' natural language does not mean that the Printer object should reject a job if the client supplies a
4239 job name that is in 'fr-ca'.

4240 The "natural-language-configured" attribute identifies the one supported natural language for generated
4241 messages which is the native natural language given the current configuration of the IPP object
4242 (administrator defined).

4243 Attributes of type 'text' and 'name' are populated from different sources. These attributes can be
4244 categorized into following groups (depending on the source of the attribute):

- 4245 1. Some attributes are supplied by the client (e.g., the client supplied "job-name", "document-name",
4246 and "requesting-user-name" operation attributes along with the corresponding Job object's "job-
4247 name" and "job-originating-user-name" attributes). The IPP object MUST accept these attributes
4248 in any natural language no matter what the set of supported languages for generated messages
- 4249 2. Some attributes are supplied by the system administrator (e.g., the Printer object's "printer-name"
4250 and "printer-location" attributes). These too can be in any natural language. If the natural
4251 language for these attributes is different than what a client requests, then they must be reported
4252 using the Natural Language Override mechanism.
- 4253 3. Some attributes are supplied by the device manufacturer (e.g., the Printer object's "printer-make-
4254 and-model" attribute). These too can be in any natural language. If the natural language for
4255 these attributes is different than what a client requests, then they must be reported using the
4256 Natural Language Override mechanism.
- 4257 4. Some attributes are supplied by the operator (e.g., the Job object's "job-message-from-operator"
4258 attribute). These too can be in any natural language. If the natural language for these attributes is
4259 different than what a client requests, then they must be reported using the Natural Language
4260 Override mechanism.
- 4261 5. Some attributes are generated by the IPP object (e.g., the Job object's "job-state-message"
4262 attribute, the Printer object's "printer-state-message" attribute, and the "status-message" operation
4263 attribute). These attributes can only be in one of the "generated-natural-language-supported"
4264 natural languages. If a client requests some natural language for these attributes other than one of
4265 the supported values, the IPP object SHOULD respond using the value of the "natural-language-
4266 configured" attribute (using the Natural Language Override mechanism if needed).

4268 The 'text' and 'name' attributes specified in this version of this document (additional ones will be
4269 registered according to the procedures in Section 6) are:

4270	Attributes	Source
4271	-----	-----
4272	Operation Attributes	
4273	job-name (name)	client
4274	document-name (name)	client
4275	requesting-user-name (name)	client
4276	status-message	Job or Printer object
4277		
4278	Job Template Attributes:	
4279	job-hold-until (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured

4280	job-hold-until-default (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4281	job-hold-until-supported (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4282	job-sheets (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4283	job-sheets-default (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4284	job-sheets-supported (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4285	media (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4286	media-default (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4287	media-supported (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4288	media-ready (keyword name)	client matches administrator-configured
4289		
4290	Job Description Attributes:	
4291	job-name (name)	client or Printer object
4292	job-originating-user-name (name)	Printer object
4293	job-state-message (text)	Job or Printer object
4294	output-device-assigned (name(127))	administrator
4295	job-message-from-operator (text(127))	operator
4296		
4297	Printer Description Attributes:	
4298	printer-name (name(127))	administrator
4299	printer-location (text(127))	administrator
4300	printer-info (text(127))	administrator
4301	printer-make-and-model (text(127))	administrator or manufacturer
4302	printer-state-message (text)	Printer object
4303	printer-message-from-operator (text(127))	operator

4304 8. Security Considerations

4305 ~~Some~~ IPP objects ~~MAY SHOULD~~ be deployed over protocol stacks that support ~~the Transport Layer~~
 4306 ~~Security (TLS) protocol~~~~Secure Socket Layer Version 3 (SSL3)~~ [SSLRFC2246]. ~~Note: SSL3 is not an~~
 4307 ~~IETF standards track specification.~~ Other IPP objects MAY be deployed over protocol stacks that do not
 4308 support ~~SSL3~~TLS. Some IPP objects MAY be deployed over both types of protocol stacks. Those IPP
 4309 objects that support ~~SSL3~~TLS, are capable of supporting mutual authentication as well as privacy of
 4310 messages via multiple encryption schemes. An important point about security related information for
 4311 ~~SSL3~~TLS access to an IPP object, is that the security-related parameters (authentication, encryption
 4312 keys, etc.) are "out-of-band" to the actual IPP protocol.

4313 An IPP object that does not support ~~SSL3~~TLS MAY elect to support a transport layer that provides other
 4314 security mechanisms. For example, in a mapping of IPP over HTTP/1.1 [IPP-PRO], if the IPP object
 4315 does not support ~~SSL3~~TLS, HTTP still allows for client authentication using Digest Access
 4316 Authentication (DAA) [RFC2069].

4317 It is difficult to anticipate the security risks that might exist in any given IPP environment. For example,
 4318 if IPP is used within a given corporation over a private network, the risks of exposing document data
 4319 may be low enough that the corporation will choose not to use encryption on that data. However, if the

4320 connection between the client and the IPP object is over a public network, the client may wish to protect
4321 the content of the information during transmission through the network with encryption.

4322 Furthermore, the value of the information being printed may vary from one IPP environment to the next.
4323 Printing payroll checks, for example, would have a different value than printing public information from
4324 a file. There is also the possibility of denial-of-service attacks, but denial-of-service attacks against
4325 printing resources are not well understood and there is no published precedents regarding this scenario.

4326 Once the authenticated identity of the requester has been supplied to the IPP object, the object uses that
4327 identity to enforce any authorization policy that might be in place. For example, one site's policy might
4328 be that only the job owner is allowed to cancel a job. The details and mechanisms to set up a particular
4329 access control policy are not part of IPP/4.0.1.1, and must be established via some other type of
4330 administrative or access control framework. However, there are operation status codes that allow an IPP
4331 server to return information back to a client about any potential access control violations for an IPP
4332 object.

4333 During a create operation, the client's identity is recorded in the Job object in an implementation-defined
4334 attribute. This information can be used to verify a client's identity for subsequent operations on that Job
4335 object in order to enforce any access control policy that might be in effect. See section 8.3 below for
4336 more details.

4337 Since the security levels or the specific threats that any given IPP system administrator may be
4338 concerned with cannot be anticipated, IPP MUST be capable of operating with different security
4339 mechanisms and security policies as required by the individual installation. Security policies might vary
4340 from very strong, to very weak, to none at all, and corresponding security mechanisms will be required.
4341 [SSL3TLS](#) supports the type of negotiated levels of security required by most, if not all, potential IPP
4342 environments. IPP environments that require no security can elect to deploy IPP objects that do not
4343 utilize the optional [SSL3TLS](#) security mechanisms.

4344 8.1 Security Scenarios

4345 The following sections describe specific security attacks for IPP environments. Where examples are
4346 provided they should be considered illustrative of the environment and not an exhaustive set. Not all of
4347 these environments will necessarily be addressed in initial implementations of IPP.

4348 8.1.1 Client and Server in the Same Security Domain

4349 This environment is typical of internal networks where traditional office workers print the output of
4350 personal productivity applications on shared work-group printers, or where batch applications print their
4351 output on large production printers. Although the identity of the user may be trusted in this environment,
4352 a user might want to protect the content of a document against such attacks as eavesdropping, replaying
4353 or tampering.

4354 8.1.2 Client and Server in Different Security Domains

4355 Examples of this environment include printing a document created by the client on a publicly available
4356 printer, such as at a commercial print shop; or printing a document remotely on a business associate's
4357 printer. This latter operation is functionally equivalent to sending the document to the business associate
4358 as a facsimile. Printing sensitive information on a Printer in a different security domain requires strong
4359 security measures. In this environment authentication of the printer is required as well as protection
4360 against unauthorized use of print resources. Since the document crosses security domains, protection
4361 against eavesdropping and document tampering are also required. It will also be important in this
4362 environment to protect Printers against "spamming" and malicious document content.

4363 8.1.3 Print by Reference

4364 When the document is not stored on the client, printing can be done by reference. That is, the print
4365 request can contain a reference, or pointer, to the document instead of the actual document itself.
4366 Standard methods currently do not exist for remote entities to "assume" the credentials of a client for
4367 forwarding requests to a 3rd party. It is anticipated that Print-By-Reference will be used to access
4368 "public" documents and that sophisticated methods for authenticating "proxies" will not be specified for
4369 version 1 of IPP.

4370 8.2 URIs for ~~SSL3~~TLS and non-~~SSL3~~TLS Access

4371 As described earlier, an IPP object ~~can~~ **SHOULD** support ~~SSL3~~TLS access, **MAY** non-~~SSL3~~TLS access,
4372 or both. The "printer-uri-supported" attribute contains the Printer object's URI(s). Its companion
4373 attribute, "uri-security-supported", identifies the security mechanism used for each URI listed in the
4374 "printer-uri-supported" attribute. For each Printer operation request, a client **MUST** supply only one
4375 URI in the "printer-uri" operation attribute. In other words, even though the Printer supports more than
4376 one URI, the client only interacts with the Printer object using one of its URIs. This duality is not needed
4377 for Job objects, since the Printer objects is the factory for Job objects, and the Printer object will
4378 generate the correct URI for new Job objects depending on the Printer object's security configuration.

4379 8.3 The "requesting-user-name" (name(MAX)) Operation Attribute

4380 Each operation **MUST** specify the user who is performing the operation in both of the following two
4381 ways:

- 4382 1) via the **REQUIRED** "requesting-user-name" operation attribute that a client **SHOULD** supply in
4383 all operations. The client **MUST** obtain the value for this attribute from an environmental or
4384 network login name for the user, rather than allowing the user to supply any value. If the client
4385 does not supply a value for "requesting-user-name", the printer **MUST** assume that the client is
4386 supplying some anonymous name, such as "anonymous".
- 4387 2) via an authentication mechanism of the underlying transport which may be configured to give no
4388 authentication information.

4389

4390 There are six cases to consider:

- 4391 a) the authentication mechanism gives no information, and the client doesn't specify "requesting-
4392 user-name".
- 4393 b) the authentication mechanism gives no information, but the client specifies "requesting-user-
4394 name".
- 4395 c) the authentication mechanism specifies a user which has no human readable representation, and
4396 the client doesn't specify "requesting-user-name".
- 4397 d) the authentication mechanism specifies a user which has no human readable representation, but
4398 the client specifies "requesting-user-name".
- 4399 e) the authentication mechanism specifies a user which has a human readable representation. The
4400 Printer object ignores the "requesting-user-name".
- 4401 f) the authentication mechanism specifies a user who is trusted and whose name means that the
4402 value of the "requesting-user-name", which MUST be present, is treated as the authenticated
4403 name.
4404

4405 Note: Case "f" is intended for a tightly coupled gateway and server to work together so that the "user"
4406 name is able to be that of the gateway client and not that of the gateway. Because most, if not all, system
4407 vendors will initially implement IPP via a gateway into their existing print system, this mechanism is
4408 necessary unless the authentication mechanism allows a gateway (client) to act on behalf of some other
4409 client.

4410 The user-name has two forms:

- 4411 - one that is human readable: it is held in the REQUIRED "job-originating-user-name" Job
4412 Description attribute which is set during the job creation operations. It is used for presentation
4413 only, such as returning in queries or printing on start sheets
- 4414 - one for authorization: it is held in an undefined (by IPP) Job object attribute which is set by the job
4415 creation operation. It is used to authorize other operations, such as Send-Document, Send-URI,
4416 Cancel-Job, to determine the user when the "my-jobs" attribute is specified with Get-Jobs, and to
4417 limit what attributes and values to return with Get-Job-Attributes and Get-Jobs.
4418

4419 The human readable user name:

- 4420 - is the value of the "requesting-user-name" for cases b, d and f.
4421 - comes from the authentication mechanism for case e
4422 - is some anonymous name, such as "anonymous" for cases a and c.
4423

4424 The user name used for authorization:

- 4425 - is the value of the "requesting-user-name" for cases b and f.
4426 - comes from the authentication mechanism for cases c, d and e
4427 - is some anonymous name, such as "anonymous" for case a.
4428

4429 The essence of these rules for resolving conflicting sources of user-names is that a printer
4430 implementation is free to pick either source as long as it achieves consistent results. That is, if a user

4431 uses the same path for a series of requests, the requests MUST appear to come from the same user from
4432 the standpoint of both the human-readable user name and the user name for authorization. This rule
4433 MUST continue to apply even if a request could be authenticated by two or more mechanisms. It doesn't
4434 matter which of several authentication mechanisms a Printer uses as long as it achieves consistent
4435 results. If a client uses more than one authentication mechanism, it is recommended that an
4436 administrator make all credentials resolve to the same user and user-name as much as possible.

4437 8.4 Restricted Queries

4438 In many IPP operations, a client supplies a list of attributes to be returned in the response. For security
4439 reasons, an IPP object may be configured not to return all attributes (or all values) that a client requests.
4440 The job attributes returned MAY depend on whether the requesting user is the same as the user that
4441 submitted the job. The IPP object MAY even return none of the requested attributes. In such cases, the
4442 status returned is the same as if the object had returned all requested attributes. The client cannot tell by
4443 such a response whether the requested attribute was present or absent on the object.

4444 8.5 Operations performed by operators and system administrators

4445 For the three printer operations Pause-Printer, Resume-Printer, and Purge-Jobs (see sections 3.2.7, 3.2.8
4446 and 3.2.9), the requesting user is intended to be an operator or administrator of the Printer object (see
4447 section 1). The means for authorizing an operator or administrator of the Printer object are not specified
4448 in this document.

4449 8.6 Queries on jobs submitted using non-IPP protocols

4450 If the device that an IPP Printer is representing is able to accept jobs using other job submission
4451 protocols in addition to IPP, it is RECOMMENDED that such an implementation at least allow such
4452 "foreign" jobs to be queried using Get-Jobs returning "job-id" and "job-uri" as 'unknown'. Such an
4453 implementation NEED NOT support all of the same IPP job attributes as for IPP jobs. The IPP object
4454 returns the 'unknown' out-of-band value for any requested attribute of a foreign job that is supported for
4455 IPP jobs, but not for foreign jobs.

4456 It is further RECOMMENDED, that the IPP Printer generate "job-id" and "job-uri" values for such
4457 "foreign jobs", if possible, so that they may be targets of other IPP operations, such as Get-Job-Attributes
4458 and Cancel-Job. Such an implementation also needs to deal with the problem of authentication of such
4459 foreign jobs. One approach would be to treat all such foreign jobs as belonging to users other than the
4460 user of the IPP client. Another approach would be for the foreign job to belong to 'anonymous'. Only if
4461 the IPP client has been authenticated as an operator or administrator of the IPP Printer object, could the
4462 foreign jobs be queried by an IPP request. Alternatively, if the security policy is to allow users to query
4463 other users' jobs, then the foreign jobs would also be visible to an end-user IPP client using Get-Jobs and
4464 Get-Job-Attributes.

4465 8.7 IPP Security Application Profile for [TLSSSL3](#)

4466 The IPP application profile for [TLS SSL3](#) follows the [standard "Mandatory Cipher Suites" "Secure](#)
4467 [Socket Layer"](#) requirement as documented in the [TLS SSL3](#) specification [[RFC2246SSL](#)]. ~~For~~
4468 ~~interoperability, the SSL3 cipher suites are:~~

4469 [SSL_RSA_WITH_RC4_128_MD5](#)
4470 [SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA](#)
4471 [SSL_RSA_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA](#)
4472 [SSL_RSA_EXPORT_WITH_RC4_40_MD5](#)
4473 [SSL_RSA_EXPORT_WITH_RC2_CBC_40_MD5](#)
4474 [SSL_RSA_WITH_NULL_MD5](#)

4475 If a conforming IPP object supports [TLSSSL3](#), it MUST implement and support the ["Mandatory Cipher](#)
4476 [Suites" as specified in the TLS specification \[RFC2246\]](#)~~cipher suites listed above~~ and MAY support
4477 additional cipher suites.

4478 A conforming IPP client SHOULD support [TLSSSL3](#) including the ["Mandatory Cipher Suites" as](#)
4479 [specified in the TLS specification \[RFC2246\]](#)~~cipher suites listed above~~. A conforming IPP client MAY
4480 support additional cipher suites. Client implementations MUST NOT assume any other cipher suites are
4481 supported by an IPP Printer object.

4482 [See the TLS specification \[RFC2246\] for a discussion of any government export restrictions on](#)
4483 [implementations conforming to the "Mandatory Cipher Suites". It is possible that due to certain](#)
4484 ~~government export restrictions some non-compliant versions of this extension could be deployed.~~
4485 ~~Implementations wishing to inter-operate with such non-compliant versions MAY offer the~~
4486 ~~SSL_RSA_EXPORT_WITH_RC4_40_MD5 and SSL_RSA_EXPORT_WITH_RC2_CBC_40_MD5~~
4487 ~~mechanisms. However, since 40-bit ciphers are known to be vulnerable to attack by current technology,~~
4488 ~~any client which activates a 40-bit cipher MUST NOT indicate to the user that the connection is~~
4489 ~~completely secure from eavesdropping.~~

4490 9. References

4491 [ASCII]

4492 Coded Character Set - 7-bit American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII), ANSI
4493 X3.4-1986. This standard is the specification of the US-ASCII charset.

4494 [[BCP-11](#)]

4495 [Bradner S., Hovey R., "The Organizations Involved in the IETF Standards Process", 1996/10/29](#)
4496 [\(RFC 2028\)](#)

4497 [HTPP]

4498 J. Barnett, K. Carter, R. DeBry, "Initial Draft - Hypertext Printing Protocol - HTPP/1.0",
4499 October 1996, <ftp://ftp.pwg.org/pub/pwg/ipp/historic/http/overview.ps.gz>

- 4500 [IANA-CON]
4501 Narte, T. and Alvestrand, H.T.: Guidelines for Writing an IANA Considerations Section in
4502 RFCs, Work in Progress, draft-iesg-iana-considerations-04.txt, May 21, 1998.
- 4503 [IANA-CS]
4504 IANA Registry of Coded Character Sets: ftp://ftp.isi.edu/in-notes/iana/assignments/character-sets
- 4505 [IANA-MT]
4506 IANA Registry of Media Types: ftp://ftp.isi.edu/in-notes/iana/assignments/media-types/
- 4507 [IPP-IIG]
4508 Hastings, T., Manros, C., "Internet Printing Protocol/1.1: draft-ietf-ipp-implementers-guide-v11-
4509 ???.txt, ?? 1999, work in progress.
- 4510 [IPP-IIG1.0]
4511 Hastings, T., Manros, C., "Internet Printing Protocol/1.0: Implementer's Guide", draft-ietf-ipp-
4512 implementers-guide-010.txt, ~~November~~ February 19998, work in progress.
- 4513 [IPP LPD]
4514 Herriot, R., Hastings, T., Jacobs, N., Martin, J., "Mapping between LPD and IPP Protocols",
4515 draft-ietf-ipp-lpd-ipp-map-05.txt, November 1998.
- 4516 [IPP-MOD1.0]
4517 R. deBry, T. Hastings, R. Herriot, S. Isaacson, P. Powell, "Internet Printing Protocol/1.0: Model
4518 and Semantics", draft-ietf-ipp-model-11.txt, November, 1998.
- 4519 [IPP-PRO]
4520 Herriot, R., Butler, S., Moore, P., Tuner, R., "Internet Printing Protocol/~~1.0~~1.1: Encoding and
4521 Transport", draft-ietf-ipp-protocol-~~v11-0007~~.txt, ~~November~~ February, 19998.
- 4522 [IPP-PRO1.0]
4523 Herriot, R., Butler, S., Moore, P., Tuner, R., "Internet Printing Protocol/1.0: Encoding and
4524 Transport", draft-ietf-ipp-protocol-07.txt, November, 1998.
- 4525 [IPP-RAT]
4526 Zilles, S., "Rationale for the Structure and Model and Protocol for the Internet Printing Protocol",
4527 draft-ietf-ipp-rat-04.txt, November, 1998.
- 4528 [IPP-REQ]
4529 Wright, D., "Design Goals for an Internet Printing Protocol", draft-ietf-ipp-req-03.txt, November,
4530 1998.
- 4531 [ISO10646-1]
4532 ISO/IEC 10646-1:1993, "Information technology -- Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character
4533 Set (UCS) - Part 1: Architecture and Basic Multilingual Plane, JTC1/SC2."

- 4534 [ISO8859-1]
4535 ISO/IEC 8859-1:1987, "Information technology -- 8-bit One-Byte Coded Character Set - Part 1:
4536 Latin Alphabet Nr 1", 1987, JTC1/SC2.
- 4537 [ISO10175]
4538 ISO/IEC 10175 Document Printing Application (DPA), June 1996.
- 4539 [LDPA]
4540 T. Hastings, S. Isaacson, M. MacKay, C. Manros, D. Taylor, P. Zehler, "LDPA - Lightweight
4541 Document Printing Application", October 1996,
4542 <ftp://ftp.pwg.org/pub/pwg/ipp/historic/ldpa/ldpa8.pdf.gz>
- 4543 [P1387.4]
4544 Kirk, M. (editor), POSIX System Administration - Part 4: Printing Interfaces, POSIX 1387.4 D8,
4545 1994.
- 4546 [PSIS] Herriot, R. (editor), X/Open A Printing System Interoperability Specification (PSIS), August
4547 1995.
- 4548 [PWG]
4549 Printer Working Group, <http://www.pwg.org>.
- 4550 [RFC1035]
4551 P. Mockapetris, "DOMAIN NAMES - IMPLEMENTATION AND SPECIFICATION", RFC
4552 1035, November 1987.
- 4553 [RFC1179]
4554 McLaughlin, L. III, (editor), "Line Printer Daemon Protocol" RFC 1179, August 1990.
- 4555 [RFC1759]
4556 Smith, R., Wright, F., Hastings, T., Zilles, S., and Gyllenskog, J., "Printer MIB", RFC 1759,
4557 March 1995.
- 4558 [RFC1766]
4559 H. Alvestrand, "Tags for the Identification of Languages", RFC 1766, March 1995.
- 4560 [RFC1903]
4561 J. Case, et.al., "Textual Conventions for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol
4562 (SNMP v2)" RFC 1903, January 1996.
- 4563 [RFC1952]
4564 P. Deutsch, "GZIP file format specification version 4.3", RFC 1952, May 1996.
- 4565 [RFC2026]
4566 S. Bradner, "The Internet Standards Process -- Revision 3", RFC 2026, October 1996.

- 4567 [\[RFC2044\]](#)
4568 ~~—— F. Yergeau, "UTF-8, a transformation format of Unicode and ISO 10646", RFC 2044, October~~
4569 ~~1996.~~
- 4570 [\[RFC2068\]](#)
4571 ~~—— R. Fielding, J. Gettys, J. Mogul, H. Frystyk, T. Berners-Lee, "Hypertext Transfer Protocol-~~
4572 ~~HTTP/1.1", RFC 2068, January 1997~~
- 4573 [\[RFC2069\]](#)
4574 ~~—— J. Franks, P. Hallam Baker, J. Hostetler, P. Leach, A. Luotonen, E. Sink, L. Stewart, "An~~
4575 ~~Extension to HTTP: Digest Access Authentication", RFC 2069, Jan 1997.~~
- 4576 [RFC2045]
4577 N. Fried, N. Borenstein, ", Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Part One: Format of
4578 Internet Message Bodies " RFC 2045, November 1996.
- 4579 [RFC2046]
4580 Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Part Two: Media Types. N. Freed & N.
4581 Borenstein. November 1996. (Obsoletes RFC1521, RFC1522, RFC1590), RFC 2046.
- 4582 [RFC2048]
4583 N. Freed, J. Klensin & J. Postel, "Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension (MIME) Part Four:
4584 Registration Procedures". RFC 2048, November 1996.
- 4585 [\[RFC2068\]](#)
4586 ~~—— R. Fielding, J. Gettys, J. Mogul, H. Frystyk, T. Berners-Lee, "Hypertext Transfer Protocol -~~
4587 ~~HTTP/1.1", RFC 2068, January 1997~~
- 4588 [\[RFC2069\]](#)
4589 ~~—— J. Franks, P. Hallam-Baker, J. Hostetler, P. Leach, A. Luotonen, E. Sink, L. Stewart, "An~~
4590 ~~Extension to HTTP: Digest Access Authentication", RFC-2069, Jan 1997.~~
- 4591 [RFC2119]
4592 S. Bradner, "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels", RFC 2119 , March
4593 1997
- 4594 [RFC2228]
4595 M. Horowitz, S. Lunt, "FTP Security Extensions", RFC 2228, October 1997.
- 4596 [\[RFC2246\]](#)
4597 ~~—— T. Dierks, C. Allen, "The TLS Protocol Version 1.0", RFC 2246, January 1999.~~
- 4598 [RFC2277]
4599 H. Alvestrand, "IETF Policy on Character Sets and Languages" RFC 2277, January 1998.
- 4600 [RFC2278]
4601 N. Freed, J. Postel: "IANA CharSet Registration Procedures", RFC 2278, January 1998.

- 4602 [RFC2279]
4603 F. Yergeau , "UTF-8, a transformation format of ISO 10646", RFC 2279. January 1998.
- 4604 [RFC2316]
4605 S. Bellovin , "Report of the IAB Security Architecture Workshop", RFC 2316, April 1998.
- 4606 [RFC2396]
4607 Berners-Lee, T., Fielding, R., Masinter, L., "Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI): Generic
4608 Syntax", RFC 2396, August 1998.
- 4609 [SSL]
4610 Netscape, The SSL Protocol, Version 3, (Text version 3.02), November 1996.
- 4611 [SWP]
4612 P. Moore, B. Jahromi, S. Butler, "Simple Web Printing SWP/1.0", May 7, 1997,
4613 ftp://ftp.pwg.org/pub/pwg/ipp/new_PRO/swp9705.pdf

4614 10. Copyright Notices

4615 The IETF takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that
4616 might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document
4617 or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it
4618 represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on the IETF's procedures
4619 with respect to rights in standards-track and standards-related documentation can be found in BCP-
4620 11[BCP-11]. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses to
4621 be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission for the use
4622 of such proprietary rights by implementers or users of this specification can be obtained from the IETF
4623 Secretariat.

4624 The IETF invites any interested party to bring to its attention any copyrights, patents or patent
4625 applications, or other proprietary rights which may cover technology that may be required to practice this
4626 standard. Please address the information to the IETF Executive Director.

4627 Copyright (C) The Internet Society (1999). All Rights Reserved.

4628 This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that
4629 comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published
4630 and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright
4631 notice and this paragraph are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document
4632 itself may not be modified in any way, such as by removing the copyright notice or references to the
4633 Internet Society or other Internet organizations, except as needed for the purpose of developing Internet
4634 standards in which case the procedures for copyrights defined in the Internet Standards process must be
4635 followed, or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

4636 The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by the Internet Society or
4637 its successors or assigns.

4638 This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and THE
4639 INTERNET SOCIETY AND THE INTERNET ENGINEERING TASK FORCE DISCLAIMS ALL
4640 WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY
4641 WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY
4642 RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A
4643 PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

4644 11. Author's Address

4645 Scott A. Isaacson (Editor)
4646 Novell, Inc.
4647 122 E 1700 S
4648 Provo, UT 84606
4649
4650 Phone: 801-861-7366
4651 Fax: 801-861-2517
4652 e-mail: sisaacson@novell.com

4653
4654 Tom Hastings
4655 Xerox Corporation
4656 ~~701 S. Aviation Blvd.~~ [737 Hawaii St. ESAE 231](#)
4657 El Segundo, CA 90245

4658
4659 Phone: 310-333-6413
4660 Fax: 310-333-5514
4661 e-mail: hastings@cp10.es.xerox.com

4662
4663 Robert Herriot
4664 ~~Xerox Corp. Sun Microsystems Inc.~~
4665 ~~3400 Hill View Ave, Building 1~~ [901 San Antonio Road, MPK-17](#)
4666 Palo Alto, CA 94304~~3~~

4667
4668 Phone: 650-~~813-7696786~~-8995
4669 Fax: 650-~~813-6860786~~-7077
4670 e-mail: robert.herriot@pahv.xerox.com eng.sun.com

4671
4672 Roger deBry
4673 HUC/003G
4674 IBM Corporation
4675 P.O. Box 1900
4676 Boulder, CO 80301-9191

4677
4678 Phone: (303) 924-4080
4679 Fax: (303) 924-9889
4680 e-mail: debry@vnet.ibm.com

4681
4682 Patrick Powell
4683 Astart Technologies
4684 9475 Chesapeake Dr., Suite D
4685 San Diego, CA 95123

4686
4687 Phone: (619) 874-6543
4688 Fax: (619) 279-8424
4689 e-mail: papowell@astart.com

4690
4691 IPP Mailing List: ipp@pwg.org
4692 IPP Mailing List Subscription: ipp-request@pwg.org
4693 IPP Web Page: <http://www.pwg.org/ipp/>

4694
4695 Implementers of this specification are encouraged to join IPP Mailing List in order to participate in any
4696 discussions of clarification issues and review of registration proposals for additional attributes and
4697 values.

4698
4699 Other Participants:

4700 Chuck Adams - Tektronix
4701 Jeff Barnett - IBM
4702 Ron Bergman - Dataproducts Corp.
4703 Sylvan Butler - HP
4704 Keith Carter - IBM Corporation
4705 Jeff Copeland - QMS
4706 Andy Davidson - Tektronix
4707 Mabry Dozier - QMS
4708 Lee Farrell - Canon Information Systems
4709 Steve Gebert - IBM
4710 Babek Jahromi - Microsoft
4711 David Kellerman - Northlake Software
4712 Rick Landau - Digital
4713 Greg LeClair - Epson
4714 Harry Lewis - IBM
4715 Pete Loya - HP
4716 Ray Lutz - Cognisys
4717 Mike MacKay - Novell, Inc.
4718 Daniel Manchala - Xerox
4719 Carl-Uno Manros - Xerox
4720 Jay Martin - Underscore
4721 Larry Masinter - Xerox

4722 Stan McConnell - Xerox
4723 Ira McDonald - High North Inc.
4724 Paul Moore - Microsoft
4725 Tetsuya Morita - Ricoh
4726 Yuichi Niwa - Ricoh
4727 Pat Nogay - IBM
4728 Ron Norton - Printronics
4729 Bob Pentecost - HP
4730 Rob Rhoads - Intel
4731 Xavier Riley - Xerox
4732 David Roach - Unisys
4733 Stuart Rowley - Kyocera
4734 Hiroyuki Sato - Canon
4735 Bob Setterbo - Adobe
4736 Devon Taylor - Novell, Inc.
4737 Mike Timperman - Lexmark
4738 Randy Turner - Sharp
4739 Atsushi Yuki - Kyocera
4740 Rick Yardumian - Xerox
4741 Lloyd Young - Lexmark
4742 Bill Wagner - DPI
4743 Jim Walker - DAZEL
4744 Chris Wellens - Interworking Labs
4745 Rob Whittle - Novell, Inc.
4746 Don Wright - Lexmark
4747 Peter Zehler - Xerox
4748 Steve Zilles - Adobe

4749 12. Formats for IPP Registration Proposals

4750 In order to propose an IPP extension for registration, the proposer must submit an application to IANA
4751 by email to "iana@iana.org" or by filling out the appropriate form on the IANA web pages
4752 (<http://www.iana.org>). This section specifies the required information and the formats for proposing
4753 registrations of extensions to IPP as provided in Section 6 for:

4754

4755 1. type2 'keyword' attribute values

4756 2. type3 'keyword' attribute values

4757 3. type2 'enum' attribute values

4758 4. type3 'enum' attribute values

4759 5. attributes

4760 6. attribute syntaxes

4761 7. operations

4762 8. status codes

4763 12.1 Type2 keyword attribute values registration

4764 Type of registration: type2 keyword attribute value

4765 Name of attribute to which this keyword specification is to be added:

4766 Proposed keyword name of this keyword value:

4767 Specification of this keyword value (follow the style of IPP Model Section 4.1.2.3):

4768 Name of proposer:

4769 Address of proposer:

4770 Email address of proposer:

4771

4772 Note: For type2 keywords, the Designated Expert will be the point of contact for the approved
4773 registration specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4774 12.2 Type3 keyword attribute values registration

4775 Type of registration: type3 keyword attribute value

4776 Name of attribute to which this keyword specification is to be added:

4777 Proposed keyword name of this keyword value:

4778 Specification of this keyword value (follow the style of IPP Model Section 4.1.2.3):

4779 Name of proposer:

4780 Address of proposer:

4781 Email address of proposer:

4782

4783 Note: For type3 keywords, the proposer will be the point of contact for the approved registration
4784 specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4785 12.3 Type2 enum attribute values registration

4786 Type of registration: type2 enum attribute value

4787 Name of attribute to which this enum specification is to be added:
4788 Keyword symbolic name of this enum value:
4789 Numeric value (to be assigned by the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA):
4790 Specification of this enum value (follow the style of IPP Model Section 4.1.4):
4791 Name of proposer:
4792 Address of proposer:
4793 Email address of proposer:
4794
4795 Note: For type2 enums, the Designated Expert will be the point of contact for the approved registration
4796 specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4797 12.4 Type3 enum attribute values registration

4798 Type of registration: type3 enum attribute value
4799 Name of attribute to which this enum specification is to be added:
4800 Keyword symbolic name of this enum value:
4801 Numeric value (to be assigned by the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA):
4802 Specification of this enum value (follow the style of IPP Model Section 4.1.4):
4803 Name of proposer:
4804 Address of proposer:
4805 Email address of proposer:
4806
4807 Note: For type3 enums, the proposer will be the point of contact for the approved registration
4808 specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4809 12.5 Attribute registration

4810 Type of registration: attribute
4811 Proposed keyword name of this attribute:
4812 Types of attribute (Operation, Job Template, Job Description, Printer Description):
4813 Operations to be used with if the attribute is an operation attribute:
4814 Object (Job, Printer, etc. if bound to an object):
4815 Attribute syntax(es) (include 1setOf and range as in Section 4.2):
4816 If attribute syntax is 'keyword' or 'enum', is it type2 or type3:
4817 If this is a Printer attribute, MAY the value returned depend on "document-format" (See Section 6.2):
4818 If this is a Job Template attribute, how does its specification depend on the value of the "multiple-
4819 document-handling" attribute:
4820 Specification of this attribute (follow the style of IPP Model Section 4.2):
4821 Name of proposer:
4822 Address of proposer:
4823 Email address of proposer:
4824
4825 Note: For attributes, the IPP Designated Expert will be the point of contact for the approved registration
4826 specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4827 12.6 Attribute Syntax registration

4828 Type of registration: attribute syntax

4829 Proposed name of this attribute syntax:

4830 Type of attribute syntax (integer, octetString, character-string, see [IPP-PRO]):

4831 Numeric value (to be assigned by the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA):

4832 Specification of this attribute (follow the style of IPP Model Section 4.1):

4833 Name of proposer:

4834 Address of proposer:

4835 Email address of proposer:

4836

4837 Note: For attribute syntaxes, the IPP Designated Expert will be the point of contact for the approved

4838 registration specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4839 12.7 Operation registration

4840 Type of registration: operation

4841 Proposed name of this operation:

4842 Numeric operation-id value (to be assigned by the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA):

4843 Object Target (Job, Printer, etc. that operation is upon):

4844 Specification of this attribute (follow the style of IPP Model Section 3):

4845 Name of proposer:

4846 Address of proposer:

4847 Email address of proposer:

4848

4849 Note: For operations, the IPP Designated Expert will be the point of contact for the approved

4850 registration specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4851 12.8 Attribute Group registration

4852 Type of registration: attribute group

4853 Proposed name of this attribute group:

4854 Numeric tag according to [IPP-PRO] (to be assigned by the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with
4855 IANA):

4856 Operation requests and group number for each operation in which the attribute group occurs:

4857 Operation responses and group number for each operation in which the attribute group occurs:

4858 Specification of this attribute group (follow the style of IPP Model Section 3):

4859 Name of proposer:

4860 Address of proposer:

4861 Email address of proposer:

4862

4863 Note: For attribute groups, the IPP Designated Expert will be the point of contact for the approved

4864 registration specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4865 12.9 Status code registration

4866 Type of registration: status code

4867 Keyword symbolic name of this status code value:

4868 Numeric value (to be assigned by the IPP Designated Expert in consultation with IANA):

4869 Operations that this status code may be used with:

4870 Specification of this status code (follow the style of IPP Model Section 14 APPENDIX B: Status Codes
4871 and Suggested Status Code Messages):

4872 Name of proposer:

4873 Address of proposer:

4874 Email address of proposer:

4875

4876 Note: For status codes, the Designated Expert will be the point of contact for the approved registration
4877 specification, if any maintenance of the registration specification is needed.

4878 13. APPENDIX A: Terminology

4879 This specification uses the terminology defined in this section.

4880 13.1 Conformance Terminology

4881 The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT",

4882 "RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described in

4883 RFC 2119 [RFC2119].

4884 13.1.1 NEED NOT

4885 This term is not included in RFC 2119. The verb "NEED NOT" indicates an action that the subject of

4886 the sentence does not have to implement in order to claim conformance to the standard. The verb

4887 "NEED NOT" is used instead of "MAY NOT" since "MAY NOT" sounds like a prohibition.

4888 13.2 Model Terminology

4889 13.2.1 Keyword

4890 Keywords are used within this document as identifiers of semantic entities within the abstract model (see

4891 section 4.1.2.3). Attribute names, some attribute values, attribute syntaxes, and attribute group names

4892 are represented as keywords.

4893 13.2.2 Attributes

4894 An attribute is an item of information that is associated with an instance of an IPP object. An attribute

4895 consists of an attribute name and one or more attribute values. Each attribute has a specific attribute

4896 syntax. All object attributes are defined in section 3.3.5 and all operation attributes are defined in
4897 section 3.

4898 Job Template Attributes are described in section 4.2. The client optionally supplies Job Template
4899 attributes in a create request (operation requests that create Job objects). The Printer object has
4900 associated attributes which define supported and default values for the Printer.

4901 13.2.2.1 Attribute Name

4902 Each attribute is uniquely identified in this document by its attribute name. An attribute name is a
4903 keyword. The keyword attribute name is given in the section header describing that attribute. In running
4904 text in this document, attribute names are indicated inside double quotation marks (") where the
4905 quotation marks are not part of the keyword itself.

4906 13.2.2.2 Attribute Group Name

4907 Related attributes are grouped into named groups. The name of the group is a keyword. The group
4908 name may be used in place of naming all the attributes in the group explicitly. Attribute groups are
4909 defined in section 3.

4910 13.2.2.3 Attribute Value

4911 Each attribute has one or more values. Attribute values are represented in the syntax type specified for
4912 that attribute. In running text in this document, attribute values are indicated inside single quotation
4913 marks ('), whether their attribute syntax is keyword, integer, text, etc. where the quotation marks are not
4914 part of the value itself.

4915 13.2.2.4 Attribute Syntax

4916 Each attribute is defined using an explicit syntax type. In this document, each syntax type is defined as a
4917 keyword with specific meaning. The "Encoding and Transport" document [IPP-PRO] indicates the
4918 actual "on-the-wire" encoding rules for each syntax type. Attribute syntax types are defined in section
4919 4.1.

4920 13.2.3 Supports

4921 By definition, a Printer object supports an attribute only if that Printer object responds with the
4922 corresponding attribute populated with some value(s) in a response to a query for that attribute. A
4923 Printer object supports an attribute value if the value is one of the Printer object's "supported values"
4924 attributes. The device behind a Printer object may exhibit a behavior that corresponds to some IPP
4925 attribute, but if the Printer object, when queried for that attribute, doesn't respond with the attribute, then
4926 as far as IPP is concerned, that implementation does not support that feature. If the Printer object's "xxx-
4927 supported" attribute is not populated with a particular value (even if that value is a legal value for that
4928 attribute), then that Printer object does not support that particular value.

4929 A conforming implementation **MUST** support all **REQUIRED** attributes. However, even for
4930 **REQUIRED** attributes, conformance to IPP does not mandate that all implementations support all
4931 possible values representing all possible job processing behaviors and features. For example, if a given
4932 instance of a Printer supports only certain document formats, then that Printer responds with the
4933 "document-format-supported" attribute populated with a set of values, possibly only one, taken from the
4934 entire set of possible values defined for that attribute. This limited set of values represents the Printer's
4935 set of supported document formats. Supporting an attribute and some set of values for that attribute
4936 enables IPP end users to be aware of and make use of those features associated with that attribute and
4937 those values. If an implementation chooses to not support an attribute or some specific value, then IPP
4938 end users would have no ability to make use of that feature within the context of IPP itself. However,
4939 due to existing practice and legacy systems which are not IPP aware, there might be some other
4940 mechanism outside the scope of IPP to control or request the "unsupported" feature (such as embedded
4941 instructions within the document data itself).

4942 For example, consider the "finishings-supported" attribute.

- 4943 1) If a Printer object is not physically capable of stapling, the "finishings-supported" attribute **MUST**
4944 **NOT** be populated with the value of 'staple'.
- 4945 2) A Printer object is physically capable of stapling, however an implementation chooses not to
4946 support stapling in the IPP "finishings" attribute. In this case, 'staple' **MUST NOT** be a value in
4947 the "finishings-supported" Printer object attribute. Without support for the value 'staple', an IPP
4948 end user would have no means within the protocol itself to request that a Job be stapled.
4949 However, an existing document data formatter might be able to request that the document be
4950 stapled directly with an embedded instruction within the document data. In this case, the IPP
4951 implementation does not "support" stapling, however the end user is still able to have some
4952 control over the stapling of the completed job.
- 4953 3) A Printer object is physically capable of stapling, and an implementation chooses to support
4954 stapling in the IPP "finishings" attribute. In this case, 'staple' **MUST** be a value in the "finishings-
4955 supported" Printer object attribute. Doing so, would enable end users to be aware of and make
4956 use of the stapling feature using IPP attributes.

4958 Even though support for Job Template attributes by a Printer object is **OPTIONAL**, it is
4959 **RECOMMENDED** that if the device behind a Printer object is capable of realizing any feature or
4960 function that corresponds to an IPP attribute and some associated value, then that implementation
4961 **SHOULD** support that IPP attribute and value.

4962 The set of values in any of the supported value attributes is set (populated) by some administrative
4963 process or automatic sensing mechanism that is outside the scope of [this IPP/1.1 document](#). For
4964 administrative policy and control reasons, an administrator may choose to make only a subset of possible
4965 values visible to the end user. In this case, the real output device behind the IPP Printer abstraction may
4966 be capable of a certain feature, however an administrator is specifying that access to that feature not be
4967 exposed to the end user through the IPP protocol. Also, since a Printer object may represent a logical
4968 print device (not just a physical device) the actual process for supporting a value is undefined and left up
4969 to the implementation. However, if a Printer object supports a value, some manual human action may be
4970 needed to realize the semantic action associated with the value, but no end user action is required.

4971 For example, if one of the values in the "finishings-supported" attribute is 'staple', the actual process
4972 might be an automatic staple action by a physical device controlled by some command sent to the
4973 device. Or, the actual process of stapling might be a manual action by an operator at an operator
4974 attended Printer object.

4975 For another example of how supported attributes function, consider a system administrator who desires
4976 to control all print jobs so that no job sheets are printed in order to conserve paper. To force no job
4977 sheets, the system administrator sets the only supported value for the "job-sheets-supported" attribute to
4978 'none'. In this case, if a client requests anything except 'none', the create request is rejected or the "job-
4979 sheets" value is ignored (depending on the value of "ipp-attribute-fidelity"). To force the use of job
4980 start/end sheets on all jobs, the administrator does not include the value 'none' in the "job-sheets-
4981 supported" attribute. In this case, if a client requests 'none', the create request is rejected or the "job-
4982 sheets" value is ignored (again depending on the value of "ipp-attribute-fidelity").

4983 13.2.4 print-stream page

4984 A "print-stream page" is a page according to the definition of pages in the language used to express the
4985 document data.

4986 13.2.5 impression

4987 An "impression" is the image (possibly many print-stream pages in different configurations) imposed
4988 onto a single media page.

4989 14. APPENDIX B: Status Codes and Suggested Status Code Messages

4990 This section defines status code enum keywords and values that are used to provide semantic
4991 information on the results of an operation request. Each operation response **MUST** include a status
4992 code. The response **MAY** also contain a status message that provides a short textual description of the
4993 status. The status code is intended for use by automata, and the status message is intended for the human
4994 end user. Since the status message is an **OPTIONAL** component of the operation response, an IPP
4995 application (i.e., a browser, GUI, print driver or gateway) is **NOT REQUIRED** to examine or display the
4996 status message, since it **MAY** not be returned to the application.

4997 The prefix of the status keyword defines the class of response as follows:

4998 "informational" - Request received, continuing process
4999 "successful" - The action was successfully received, understood, and accepted
5000 "redirection" - Further action must be taken in order to complete the request
5001 "client-error" - The request contains bad syntax or cannot be fulfilled
5002 "server-error" - The IPP object failed to fulfill an apparently valid request
5003

5004 As with type2 enums, IPP status codes are extensible. IPP clients are **NOT REQUIRED** to understand
5005 the meaning of all registered status codes, though such understanding is obviously desirable. However,

5006 IPP clients MUST understand the class of any status code, as indicated by the prefix, and treat any
5007 unrecognized response as being equivalent to the first status code of that class, with the exception that an
5008 unrecognized response MUST NOT be cached. For example, if an unrecognized status code of "client-
5009 error-xxx-yyy" is received by the client, it can safely assume that there was something wrong with its
5010 request and treat the response as if it had received a "client-error-bad-request" status code. In such cases,
5011 IPP applications SHOULD present the OPTIONAL message (if present) to the end user since the
5012 message is likely to contain human readable information which will help to explain the unusual status.
5013 The name of the enum is the suggested status message for US English.

5014 The status code values range from 0x0000 to 0x7FFF. The value ranges for each status code class are as
5015 follows:

5016 "successful" - 0x0000 to 0x00FF
5017 "informational" - 0x0100 to 0x01FF
5018 "redirection" - 0x0200 to 0x02FF
5019 "client-error" - 0x0400 to 0x04FF
5020 "server-error" - 0x0500 to 0x05FF
5021

5022 The top half (128 values) of each range (0x0n40 to 0x0nFF, for n = 0 to 5) is reserved for private use
5023 within each status code class. Values 0x0600 to 0x7FFF are reserved for future assignment and MUST
5024 NOT be used.

5025 14.1 Status Codes

5026 Each status code is described below. Section 14.1.5.9 contains a table that indicates which status codes
5027 apply to which operations. The Implementer's Guide [IPP-IIG] describe the suggested steps for
5028 processing IPP attributes for all operations, including returning status codes.

5029 14.1.1 Informational

5030 This class of status code indicates a provisional response and is to be used for informational purposes
5031 only.

5032 There are no status codes defined in IPP/1.01.1 for this class of status code.

5033 14.1.2 Successful Status Codes

5034 This class of status code indicates that the client's request was successfully received, understood, and
5035 accepted.

5036 14.1.2.1 successful-ok (0x0000)

5037 The request has succeeded and no request attributes were substituted or ignored. In the case of a
5038 response to a create request, the 'successful-ok' status code indicates that the request was successfully
5039 received and validated, and that the Job object has been created; it does not indicate that the job has been

5040 processed. The transition of the Job object into the 'completed' state is the only indicator that the job has
5041 been printed.

5042 14.1.2.2 successful-ok-ignored-or-substituted-attributes (0x0001)

5043 The request has succeeded, but some supplied (1) attributes were ignored or (2) unsupported values were
5044 substituted with supported values or were ignored in order to perform the operation without rejecting it.
5045 Unsupported attributes, attribute syntaxes, or values **MUST** be returned in the Unsupported Attributes
5046 group of the response for all operations. There is an exception to this rule for the query operations: Get-
5047 Printer-Attributes, Get-Jobs, and Get-Job-Attributes for the "requested-attributes" operation attribute
5048 only. When the supplied values of the "requested-attributes" operation attribute are requesting attributes
5049 that are not supported, the IPP object **MAY**, but is **NOT REQUIRED** to, return the "requested-attributes"
5050 attribute in the Unsupported Attribute response group (with the unsupported values only). See section
5051 3.2.1.2.

5052 14.1.2.3 successful-ok-conflicting-attributes (0x0002)

5053 The request has succeeded, but some supplied attribute values conflicted with the values of other
5054 supplied attributes. These conflicting values were either (1) substituted with (supported) values or (2)
5055 the attributes were removed in order to process the job without rejecting it. Attributes or values which
5056 conflict with other attributes and have been substituted or ignored **MUST** be returned in the Unsupported
5057 Attributes group of the response for all operations as supplied by the client. See section 3.2.1.2.

5058 14.1.3 Redirection Status Codes

5059 This class of status code indicates that further action needs to be taken to fulfill the request.

5060 There are no status codes defined in IPP/~~1.0~~1.1 for this class of status code.

5061 14.1.4 Client Error Status Codes

5062 This class of status code is intended for cases in which the client seems to have erred. The IPP object
5063 **SHOULD** return a message containing an explanation of the error situation and whether it is a temporary
5064 or permanent condition.

5065 14.1.4.1 client-error-bad-request (0x0400)

5066 The request could not be understood by the IPP object due to malformed syntax (such as the value of a
5067 fixed length attribute whose length does not match the prescribed length for that attribute - see the
5068 Implementer's Guide [IPP-IIG]). The IPP application **SHOULD NOT** repeat the request without
5069 modifications.

5070 14.1.4.2 client-error-forbidden (0x0401)

5071 The IPP object understood the request, but is refusing to fulfill it. Additional authentication information
5072 or authorization credentials will not help and the request SHOULD NOT be repeated. This status code
5073 is commonly used when the IPP object does not wish to reveal exactly why the request has been refused
5074 or when no other response is applicable.

5075 14.1.4.3 client-error-not-authenticated (0x0402)

5076 The request requires user authentication. The IPP client may repeat the request with suitable
5077 authentication information. If the request already included authentication information, then this status
5078 code indicates that authorization has been refused for those credentials. If this response contains the
5079 same challenge as the prior response, and the user agent has already attempted authentication at least
5080 once, then the response message may contain relevant diagnostic information. This status codes reveals
5081 more information than "client-error-forbidden".

5082 14.1.4.4 client-error-not-authorized (0x0403)

5083 The requester is not authorized to perform the request. Additional authentication information or
5084 authorization credentials will not help and the request SHOULD NOT be repeated. This status code is
5085 used when the IPP object wishes to reveal that the authentication information is understandable,
5086 however, the requester is explicitly not authorized to perform the request. This status codes reveals
5087 more information than "client-error-forbidden" and "client-error-not-authenticated".

5088 14.1.4.5 client-error-not-possible (0x0404)

5089 This status code is used when the request is for something that can not happen. For example, there
5090 might be a request to cancel a job that has already been canceled or aborted by the system. The IPP
5091 client SHOULD NOT repeat the request.

5092 14.1.4.6 client-error-timeout (0x0405)

5093 The client did not produce a request within the time that the IPP object was prepared to wait. For
5094 example, a client issued a Create-Job operation and then, after a long period of time, issued a Send-
5095 Document operation and this error status code was returned in response to the Send-Document request
5096 (see section 3.3.1). The IPP object might have been forced to clean up resources that had been held for
5097 the waiting additional Documents. The IPP object was forced to close the Job since the client took too
5098 long. The client SHOULD NOT repeat the request without modifications.

5099 14.1.4.7 client-error-not-found (0x0406)

5100 The IPP object has not found anything matching the request URI. No indication is given of whether the
5101 condition is temporary or permanent. For example, a client with an old reference to a Job (a URI) tries
5102 to cancel the Job, however in the mean time the Job might have been completed and all record of it at the
5103 Printer has been deleted. This status code, 'client-error-not-found' is returned indicating that the

5104 referenced Job can not be found. This error status code is also used when a client supplies a URI as a
5105 reference to the document data in either a Print-URI or Send-URI operation, but the document can not be
5106 found.

5107 In practice, an IPP application should avoid a not found situation by first querying and presenting a list
5108 of valid Printer URIs and Job URIs to the end-user.

5109 14.1.4.8 client-error-gone (0x0407)

5110 The requested object is no longer available and no forwarding address is known. This condition should
5111 be considered permanent. Clients with link editing capabilities should delete references to the request
5112 URI after user approval. If the IPP object does not know or has no facility to determine, whether or not
5113 the condition is permanent, the status code "client-error-not-found" should be used instead.

5114 This response is primarily intended to assist the task of maintenance by notifying the recipient that the
5115 resource is intentionally unavailable and that the IPP object administrator desires that remote links to
5116 that resource be removed. It is not necessary to mark all permanently unavailable resources as "gone" or
5117 to keep the mark for any length of time -- that is left to the discretion of the IPP object administrator.

5118 14.1.4.9 client-error-request-entity-too-large (0x0408)

5119 The IPP object is refusing to process a request because the request entity is larger than the IPP object is
5120 willing or able to process. An IPP Printer returns this status code when it limits the size of print jobs and
5121 it receives a print job that exceeds that limit or when the attributes are so many that their encoding
5122 causes the request entity to exceed IPP object capacity.

5123 14.1.4.10 client-error-request-value-too-long (0x0409)

5124 The IPP object is refusing to service the request because one or more of the client-supplied attributes has
5125 a variable length value that is longer than the maximum length specified for that attribute. The IPP
5126 object might not have sufficient resources (memory, buffers, etc.) to process (even temporarily),
5127 interpret, and/or ignore a value larger than the maximum length. Another use of this error code is when
5128 the IPP object supports the processing of a large value that is less than the maximum length, but during
5129 the processing of the request as a whole, the object may pass the value onto some other system
5130 component which is not able to accept the large value. For more details, see the Implementer's Guide
5131 [IPP-IIG] .

5132 Note: For attribute values that are URIs, this rare condition is only likely to occur when a client has
5133 improperly submitted a request with long query information (e.g. an IPP application allows an end-user
5134 to enter an invalid URI), when the client has descended into a URI "black hole" of redirection (e.g., a
5135 redirected URI prefix that points to a suffix of itself), or when the IPP object is under attack by a client
5136 attempting to exploit security holes present in some IPP objects using fixed-length buffers for reading or
5137 manipulating the Request-URI.

5138 14.1.4.11 client-error-document-format-not-supported (0x040A)

5139 The IPP object is refusing to service the request because the document data is in a format, as specified in
5140 the "document-format" operation attribute, that is not supported by the Printer object. This error is
5141 returned independent of the client-supplied "ipp-attribute-fidelity". The Printer object MUST return this
5142 status code, even if there are other attributes that are not supported as well, since this error is a bigger
5143 problem than with Job Template attributes.

5144 14.1.4.12 client-error-attributes-or-values-not-supported (0x040B)

5145 In a create request, if the Printer object does not support one or more attributes, attribute syntaxes, or
5146 attribute values supplied in the request and the client supplied the "ipp-attributes-fidelity" operation
5147 attribute with the 'true' value, the Printer object MUST return this status code. For example, if the
5148 request indicates 'iso-a4' media, but that media type is not supported by the Printer object. Or, if the
5149 client supplies an optional attribute and the attribute itself is not even supported by the Printer. If the
5150 "ipp-attribute-fidelity" attribute is 'false', the Printer MUST ignore or substitute values for unsupported
5151 attributes and values rather than reject the request and return this status code.

5152 For any operation where a client requests attributes (such as a Get-Jobs, Get-Printer-Attributes, or Get-
5153 Job-Attributes operation), if the IPP object does not support one or more of the requested attributes, the
5154 IPP object simply ignores the unsupported requested attributes and processes the request as if they had
5155 not been supplied, rather than returning this status code. In this case, the IPP object MUST return the
5156 'successful-ok-ignored-or-substituted-attributes' status code and MAY return the unsupported attributes
5157 as values of the "requested-attributes" in the Unsupported Attributes Group (see section 14.1.2.2).

5158 14.1.4.13 client-error-uri-scheme-not-supported (0x040C)

5159 The type of the client supplied URI in a Print-URI or a Send-URI operation is not supported.

5160 14.1.4.14 client-error-charset-not-supported (0x040D)

5161 For any operation, if the IPP Printer does not support the charset supplied by the client in the "attributes-
5162 charset" operation attribute, the Printer MUST reject the operation and return this status and any 'text' or
5163 'name' attributes using the 'utf-8' charset (see Section 3.1.4.1).

5164 14.1.4.15 client-error-conflicting-attributes (0x040E)

5165 The request is rejected because some attribute values conflicted with the values of other attributes which
5166 this specification does not permit to be substituted or ignored.

5167 14.1.5 Server Error Status Codes

5168 This class of status codes indicates cases in which the IPP object is aware that it has erred or is incapable
5169 of performing the request. The IPP object SHOULD include a message containing an explanation of the
5170 error situation, and whether it is a temporary or permanent condition.

5171 14.1.5.1 server-error-internal-error (0x0500)

5172 The IPP object encountered an unexpected condition that prevented it from fulfilling the request. This
5173 error status code differs from "server-error-temporary-error" in that it implies a more permanent type of
5174 internal error. It also differs from "server-error-device-error" in that it implies an unexpected condition
5175 (unlike a paper-jam or out-of-toner problem which is undesirable but expected). This error status code
5176 indicates that probably some knowledgeable human intervention is required.

5177 14.1.5.2 server-error-operation-not-supported (0x0501)

5178 The IPP object does not support the functionality required to fulfill the request. This is the appropriate
5179 response when the IPP object does not recognize an operation or is not capable of supporting it.

5180 14.1.5.3 server-error-service-unavailable (0x0502)

5181 The IPP object is currently unable to handle the request due to a temporary overloading or maintenance
5182 of the IPP object. The implication is that this is a temporary condition which will be alleviated after
5183 some delay. If known, the length of the delay may be indicated in the message. If no delay is given, the
5184 IPP application should handle the response as it would for a "server-error-temporary-error" response. If
5185 the condition is more permanent, the error status codes "client-error-gone" or "client-error-not-found"
5186 could be used.

5187 14.1.5.4 server-error-version-not-supported (0x0503)

5188 The IPP object does not support, or refuses to support, the IPP protocol version that was used in the
5189 request message. The IPP object is indicating that it is unable or unwilling to complete the request using
5190 the same version as supplied in the request other than with this error message. The response should
5191 contain a Message describing why that version is not supported and what other versions are supported by
5192 that IPP object.

5193 A conforming IPP/1.1 client MUST specify ~~the a~~ valid version ('1.1' or '1.0') on each request. A
5194 conforming IPP/1.1 object MUST NOT return this status code to a conforming IPP/1.1 or IPP/1.0
5195 client. An IPP object MUST return this status code to a non-conforming IPP client. The response
5196 MUST identify in the "version-number" operation attribute the closest version number that the IPP
5197 object does support. For example, if a client supplies version '1.0', a conforming IPP/1.1 object MUST
5198 respond with version '1.0'.

5199 14.1.5.5 server-error-device-error (0x0504)

5200 A printer error, such as a paper jam, occurs while the IPP object processes a Print or Send operation.
5201 The response contains the true Job Status (the values of the "job-state" and "job-state-reasons"
5202 attributes). Additional information can be returned in the optional "job-state-message" attribute value or
5203 in the OPTIONAL status message that describes the error in more detail. This error status code is only
5204 returned in situations where the Printer is unable to accept the create request because of such a device
5205 error. For example, if the Printer is unable to spool, and can only accept one job at a time, the reason it

5206 might reject a create request is that the printer currently has a paper jam. In many cases however, where
5207 the Printer object can accept the request even though the Printer has some error condition, the
5208 'successful-ok' status code will be returned. In such a case, the client would look at the returned Job
5209 Object Attributes or later query the Printer to determine its state and state reasons.

5210 14.1.5.6 server-error-temporary-error (0x0505)

5211 A temporary error such as a buffer full write error, a memory overflow (i.e. the document data exceeds
5212 the memory of the Printer), or a disk full condition, occurs while the IPP Printer processes an operation.
5213 The client MAY try the unmodified request again at some later point in time with an expectation that the
5214 temporary internal error condition may have been cleared. Alternatively, as an implementation option, a
5215 Printer object MAY delay the response until the temporary condition is cleared so that no error is
5216 returned.

5217 14.1.5.7 server-error-not-accepting-jobs (0x0506)

5218 A temporary error indicating that the Printer is not currently accepting jobs, because the administrator
5219 has set the value of the Printer's "printer-is-not-accepting-jobs" attribute to 'false' (by means outside [the](#)
5220 [scope](#) of [this IPP/4.01.1 document](#)).

5221 14.1.5.8 server-error-busy (0x0507)

5222 A temporary error indicating that the Printer is too busy processing jobs and/or other requests. The client
5223 SHOULD try the unmodified request again at some later point in time with an expectation that the
5224 temporary busy condition will have been cleared.

5225 14.1.5.9 server-error-job-canceled (0x0508)

5226 An error indicating that the job has been canceled by an operator or the system while the client was
5227 transmitting the data to the IPP Printer. If a job-id and job-uri had been created, then they are returned in
5228 the Print-Job, Send-Document, or Send-URI response as usual; otherwise, no job-id and job-uri are
5229 returned in the response.

5230 14.2 Status Codes for IPP Operations

5231 PJ = Print-Job, PU = Print-URI, CJ = Create-Job, SD = Send-Document
 5232 SU = Send-URI, V = Validate-Job, GA = Get-Job-Attributes and
 5233 Get-Printer-Attributes, GJ = Get-Jobs, C = Cancel-Job

5234		IPP Operations								
5235	IPP Status Keyword	PJ	PU	CJ	SD	SU	V	GA	GJ	C
5236	-----	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
5237	successful-ok	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5238	successful-ok-ignored-or-substituted-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5239	attributes									
5240	successful-ok-conflicting-attributes	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5241	client-error-bad-request	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5242	client-error-forbidden	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5243	client-error-not-authenticated	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5244	client-error-not-authorized	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5245	client-error-not-possible	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5246	client-error-timeout			<u>*</u>	x	<u>x</u>				
5247	client-error-not-found	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5248	client-error-gone	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5249	client-error-request-entity-too-large	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5250	client-error-request-value-too-long	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5251	client-error-document-format-not-	x	x		x	x	x	x		
5252	supported									
5253	client-error-attributes-or-values-not-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5254	supported									
5255	client-error-uri-scheme-not-supported		x			x				
5256	client-error-charset-not-supported	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5257	client-error-conflicting-attributes	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5258	server-error-internal-error	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5259	server-error-operation-not-supported		x	x	x	x				
5260	server-error-service-unavailable	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5261	server-error-version-not-supported	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5262	server-error-device-error	x	x	x	x	x				
5263	server-error-temporary-error	x	x	x	x	x				
5264	server-error-not-accepting-jobs	x	x	x			x			
5265	server-error-busy	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5266	server-error-job-canceled	x			x					
5267										
5268										

5269 HJ = Hold-Job, RJ = Release-Job, RS = Restart-Job
 5270 PP = Pause-Printer, RP = Resume-Printer, PJ = Purge-Jobs

	IPP Operations (cont.)					
IPP Status Keyword	HJ	RJ	RS	PP	RP	PJ
-----	--	--	--	--	--	--
<u>successful-ok</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>successful-ok-ignored-or-substituted-</u> <u>attributes</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>successful-ok-conflicting-attributes</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-bad-request</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-forbidden</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-not-authenticated</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-not-authorized</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-not-possible</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-timeout</u>						
<u>client-error-not-found</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-gone</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-request-entity-too-large</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-request-value-too-long</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-document-format-not-</u> <u>supported</u>						
<u>client-error-attributes-or-values-not-</u> <u>supported</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-uri-scheme-not-supported</u>						
<u>client-error-charset-not-supported</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>client-error-conflicting-attributes</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>server-error-internal-error</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>server-error-operation-not-supported</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>server-error-service-unavailable</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>server-error-version-not-supported</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>server-error-device-error</u>						
<u>server-error-temporary-error</u>						
<u>server-error-not-accepting-jobs</u>						
<u>server-error-busy</u>	x	x	x	x	x	x
<u>server-error-job-canceled</u>						

5305

5306 15. APPENDIX C: "media" keyword values

5307 Standard keyword values are taken from several sources.

5308 Standard values are defined (taken from DPA[ISO10175] and the Printer MIB[RFC1759]):

- 5309 'default': The default medium for the output device
- 5310 'iso-a4-white': Specifies the ISO A4 white medium
- 5311 'iso-a4-colored': Specifies the ISO A4 colored medium
- 5312 'iso-a4-transparent': Specifies the ISO A4 transparent medium
- 5313 'iso-a3-white': Specifies the ISO A3 white medium
- 5314 'iso-a3-colored': Specifies the ISO A3 colored medium
- 5315 'iso-a5-white': Specifies the ISO A5 white medium
- 5316 'iso-a5-colored': Specifies the ISO A5 colored medium
- 5317 'iso-b4-white': Specifies the ISO B4 white medium
- 5318 'iso-b4-colored': Specifies the ISO B4 colored medium
- 5319 'iso-b5-white': Specifies the ISO B5 white medium
- 5320 'iso-b5-colored': Specifies the ISO B5 colored medium
- 5321 'jis-b4-white': Specifies the JIS B4 white medium
- 5322 'jis-b4-colored': Specifies the JIS B4 colored medium
- 5323 'jis-b5-white': Specifies the JIS B5 white medium
- 5324 'jis-b5-colored': Specifies the JIS B5 colored medium

5325

5326 The following standard values are defined for North American media:

- 5327 'na-letter-white': Specifies the North American letter white medium
- 5328 'na-letter-colored': Specifies the North American letter colored medium
- 5329 'na-letter-transparent': Specifies the North American letter transparent medium
- 5330 'na-legal-white': Specifies the North American legal white medium
- 5331 'na-legal-colored': Specifies the North American legal colored medium

5332

5333 The following standard values are defined for envelopes:

- 5334 'iso-b4-envelope': Specifies the ISO B4 envelope medium
- 5335 'iso-b5-envelope': Specifies the ISO B5 envelope medium
- 5336 'iso-c3-envelope': Specifies the ISO C3 envelope medium
- 5337 'iso-c4-envelope': Specifies the ISO C4 envelope medium
- 5338 'iso-c5-envelope': Specifies the ISO C5 envelope medium
- 5339 'iso-c6-envelope': Specifies the ISO C6 envelope medium
- 5340 'iso-designated-long-envelope': Specifies the ISO Designated Long envelope medium
- 5341 'na-10x13-envelope': Specifies the North American 10x13 envelope medium
- 5342 'na-9x12-envelope': Specifies the North American 9x12 envelope medium

5343 'monarch-envelope': Specifies the Monarch envelope
5344 'na-number-10-envelope': Specifies the North American number 10 business envelope medium
5345 'na-7x9-envelope': Specifies the North American 7x9 inch envelope
5346 'na-9x11-envelope': Specifies the North American 9x11 inch envelope
5347 'na-10x14-envelope': Specifies the North American 10x14 inch envelope
5348 'na-number-9-envelope': Specifies the North American number 9 business envelope
5349 'na-6x9-envelope': Specifies the North American 6x9 inch envelope
5350 'na-10x15-envelope': Specifies the North American 10x15 inch envelope
5351

5352 The following standard values are defined for the less commonly used media (white-only):

5353 'executive-white': Specifies the white executive medium
5354 'folio-white': Specifies the folio white medium
5355 'invoice-white': Specifies the white invoice medium
5356 'ledger-white': Specifies the white ledger medium
5357 'quarto-white': Specifies the white quarto medium
5358 'iso-a0-white': Specifies the ISO A0 white medium
5359 'iso-a1-white': Specifies the ISO A1 white medium
5360 'iso-a2-white': Specifies the ISO A2 white medium
5361 'iso-a6-white': Specifies the ISO A6 white medium
5362 'iso-a7-white': Specifies the ISO A7 white medium
5363 'iso-a8-white': Specifies the ISO A8 white medium
5364 'iso-a9-white': Specifies the ISO A9 white medium
5365 'iso-10-white': Specifies the ISO A10 white medium
5366 'iso-b0-white': Specifies the ISO B0 white medium
5367 'iso-b1-white': Specifies the ISO B1 white medium
5368 'iso-b2-white': Specifies the ISO B2 white medium
5369 'iso-b3-white': Specifies the ISO B3 white medium
5370 'iso-b6-white': Specifies the ISO B6 white medium
5371 'iso-b7-white': Specifies the ISO B7 white medium
5372 'iso-b8-white': Specifies the ISO B8 white medium
5373 'iso-b9-white': Specifies the ISO B9 white medium
5374 'iso-b10-white': Specifies the ISO B10 white medium
5375 'jis-b0-white': Specifies the JIS B0 white medium
5376 'jis-b1-white': Specifies the JIS B1 white medium
5377 'jis-b2-white': Specifies the JIS B2 white medium
5378 'jis-b3-white': Specifies the JIS B3 white medium
5379 'jis-b6-white': Specifies the JIS B6 white medium
5380 'jis-b7-white': Specifies the JIS B7 white medium
5381 'jis-b8-white': Specifies the JIS B8 white medium
5382 'jis-b9-white': Specifies the JIS B9 white medium
5383 'jis-b10-white': Specifies the JIS B10 white medium
5384

5385 The following standard values are defined for engineering media:

5386 `a`: Specifies the engineering A size medium
5387 `b`: Specifies the engineering B size medium
5388 `c`: Specifies the engineering C size medium
5389 `d`: Specifies the engineering D size medium
5390 `e`: Specifies the engineering E size medium
5391

5392 The following standard values are defined for input-trays (from ISO DPA and the Printer MIB):

5393 `top`: The top input tray in the printer.
5394 `middle`: The middle input tray in the printer.
5395 `bottom`: The bottom input tray in the printer.
5396 `envelope`: The envelope input tray in the printer.
5397 `manual`: The manual feed input tray in the printer.
5398 `large-capacity`: The large capacity input tray in the printer.
5399 `main`: The main input tray
5400 `side`: The side input tray
5401

5402 The following standard values are defined for media sizes (from ISO DPA):

5403 `iso-a0`: Specifies the ISO A0 size: 841 mm by 1189 mm as defined in ISO 216
5404 `iso-a1`: Specifies the ISO A1 size: 594 mm by 841 mm as defined in ISO 216
5405 `iso-a2`: Specifies the ISO A2 size: 420 mm by 594 mm as defined in ISO 216
5406 `iso-a3`: Specifies the ISO A3 size: 297 mm by 420 mm as defined in ISO 216
5407 `iso-a4`: Specifies the ISO A4 size: 210 mm by 297 mm as defined in ISO 216
5408 `iso-a5`: Specifies the ISO A5 size: 148 mm by 210 mm as defined in ISO 216
5409 `iso-a6`: Specifies the ISO A6 size: 105 mm by 148 mm as defined in ISO 216
5410 `iso-a7`: Specifies the ISO A7 size: 74 mm by 105 mm as defined in ISO 216
5411 `iso-a8`: Specifies the ISO A8 size: 52 mm by 74 mm as defined in ISO 216
5412 `iso-a9`: Specifies the ISO A9 size: 37 mm by 52 mm as defined in ISO 216
5413 `iso-a10`: Specifies the ISO A10 size: 26 mm by 37 mm as defined in ISO 216
5414 `iso-b0`: Specifies the ISO B0 size: 1000 mm by 1414 mm as defined in ISO 216
5415 `iso-b1`: Specifies the ISO B1 size: 707 mm by 1000 mm as defined in ISO 216
5416 `iso-b2`: Specifies the ISO B2 size: 500 mm by 707 mm as defined in ISO 216
5417 `iso-b3`: Specifies the ISO B3 size: 353 mm by 500 mm as defined in ISO 216
5418 `iso-b4`: Specifies the ISO B4 size: 250 mm by 353 mm as defined in ISO 216
5419 `iso-b5`: Specifies the ISO B5 size: 176 mm by 250 mm as defined in ISO 216
5420 `iso-b6`: Specifies the ISO B6 size: 125 mm by 176 mm as defined in ISO 216
5421 `iso-b7`: Specifies the ISO B7 size: 88 mm by 125 mm as defined in ISO 216
5422 `iso-b8`: Specifies the ISO B8 size: 62 mm by 88 mm as defined in ISO 216
5423 `iso-b9`: Specifies the ISO B9 size: 44 mm by 62 mm as defined in ISO 216
5424 `iso-b10`: Specifies the ISO B10 size: 31 mm by 44 mm as defined in ISO 216
5425 `na-letter`: Specifies the North American letter size: 8.5 inches by 11 inches
5426 `na-legal`: Specifies the North American legal size: 8.5 inches by 14 inches
5427 `executive`: Specifies the executive size (7.25 X 10.5 in)
5428 `folio`: Specifies the folio size (8.5 X 13 in)

5429 `invoice`: Specifies the invoice size (5.5 X 8.5 in)
5430 `ledger`: Specifies the ledger size (11 X 17 in)
5431 `quarto`: Specifies the quarto size (8.5 X 10.83 in)
5432 `iso-c3`: Specifies the ISO C3 size: 324 mm by 458 mm as defined in ISO 269
5433 `iso-c4`: Specifies the ISO C4 size: 229 mm by 324 mm as defined in ISO 269
5434 `iso-c5`: Specifies the ISO C5 size: 162 mm by 229 mm as defined in ISO 269
5435 `iso-c6`: Specifies the ISO C6 size: 114 mm by 162 mm as defined in ISO 269
5436 `iso-designated-long`: Specifies the ISO Designated Long size: 110 mm by 220 mm as defined in ISO
5437 269
5438 `na-10x13-envelope`: Specifies the North American 10x13 size: 10 inches by 13 inches
5439 `na-9x12-envelope`: Specifies the North American 9x12 size: 9 inches by 12 inches
5440 `na-number-10-envelope`: Specifies the North American number 10 business envelope size: 4.125
5441 inches by 9.5 inches
5442 `na-7x9-envelope`: Specifies the North American 7x9 inch envelope size
5443 `na-9x11-envelope`: Specifies the North American 9x11 inch envelope size
5444 `na-10x14-envelope`: Specifies the North American 10x14 inch envelope size
5445 `na-number-9-envelope`: Specifies the North American number 9 business envelope size
5446 `na-6x9-envelope`: Specifies the North American 6x9 envelope size
5447 `na-10x15-envelope`: Specifies the North American 10x15 envelope size
5448 `monarch-envelope`: Specifies the Monarch envelope size (3.87 x 7.5 in)
5449 `jis-b0`: Specifies the JIS B0 size: 1030mm x 1456mm
5450 `jis-b1`: Specifies the JIS B1 size: 728mm x 1030mm
5451 `jis-b2`: Specifies the JIS B2 size: 515mm x 728mm
5452 `jis-b3`: Specifies the JIS B3 size: 364mm x 515mm
5453 `jis-b4`: Specifies the JIS B4 size: 257mm x 364mm
5454 `jis-b5`: Specifies the JIS B5 size: 182mm x 257mm
5455 `jis-b6`: Specifies the JIS B6 size: 128mm x 182mm
5456 `jis-b7`: Specifies the JIS B7 size: 91mm x 128mm
5457 `jis-b8`: Specifies the JIS B8 size: 64mm x 91mm
5458 `jis-b9`: Specifies the JIS B9 size: 45mm x 64mm
5459 `jis-b10`: Specifies the JIS B10 size: 32mm x 45mm

5460 16. APPENDIX D: Processing IPP Attributes

5461 When submitting a print job to a Printer object, the IPP model allows a client to supply operation and
5462 Job Template attributes along with the document data. These Job Template attributes in the create
5463 request affect the rendering, production and finishing of the documents in the job. Similar types of
5464 instructions may also be contained in the document to be printed, that is, embedded within the print data
5465 itself. In addition, the Printer has a set of attributes that describe what rendering and finishing options
5466 which are supported by that Printer. This model, which allows for flexibility and power, also introduces
5467 the potential that at job submission time, these client-supplied attributes may conflict with either:

- 5468 - what the implementation is capable of realizing (i.e., what the Printer supports), as well as
- 5469 - the instructions embedded within the print data itself.

5470

5471 The following sections describe how these two types of conflicts are handled in the IPP model.

5472 16.1 Fidelity

5473 If there is a conflict between what the client requests and what a Printer object supports, the client may
5474 request one of two possible conflict handling mechanisms:

- 5475 1) either reject the job since the job can not be processed exactly as specified, or
 - 5476 2) allow the Printer to make any changes necessary to proceed with processing the Job the best it can.
- 5477

5478 In the first case the client is indicating to the Printer object: "Print the job exactly as specified with no
5479 exceptions, and if that can't be done, don't even bother printing the job at all." In the second case, the
5480 client is indicating to the Printer object: "It is more important to make sure the job is printed rather than
5481 be processed exactly as specified; just make sure the job is printed even if client supplied attributes need
5482 to be changed or ignored."

5483 The IPP model accounts for this situation by introducing an "ipp-attribute-fidelity" attribute.

5484 In a create request, "ipp-attribute-fidelity" is a boolean operation attribute that is **OPTIONALLY**
5485 supplied by the client. The value 'true' indicates that total fidelity to client supplied Job Template
5486 attributes and values is required. The client is requesting that the Job be printed exactly as specified, and
5487 if that is not possible then the job **MUST** be rejected rather than processed incorrectly. The value 'false'
5488 indicates that a reasonable attempt to print the Job is acceptable. If a Printer does not support some of
5489 the client supplied Job Template attributes or values, the Printer **MUST** ignore them or substitute any
5490 supported value for unsupported values, respectively. The Printer may choose to substitute the default
5491 value associated with that attribute, or use some other supported value that is similar to the unsupported
5492 requested value. For example, if a client supplies a "media" value of 'na-letter', the Printer may choose
5493 to substitute 'iso-a4' rather than a default value of 'envelope'. If the client does not supply the "ipp-
5494 attribute-fidelity" attribute, the Printer assumes a value of 'false'.

5495 Each Printer implementation **MUST** support both types of "fidelity" printing (that is whether the client
5496 supplies a value of 'true' or 'false'):

- 5497 - If the client supplies 'false' or does not supply the attribute, the Printer object **MUST** always accept
5498 the request by ignoring unsupported Job Template attributes and by substituting unsupported
5499 values of supported Job Template attributes with supported values.
 - 5500 - If the client supplies 'true', the Printer object **MUST** reject the request if the client supplies
5501 unsupported Job Template attributes.
- 5502

5503 Since a client can always query a Printer to find out exactly what is and is not supported, "ipp-attribute-
5504 fidelity" set to 'false' is useful when:

- 5505 1) The End-User uses a command line interface to request attributes that might not be supported.
- 5506 2) In a GUI context, if the End User expects the job might be moved to another printer and prefers a
5507 sub-optimal result to nothing at all.
- 5508 3) The End User just wants something reasonable in lieu of nothing at all.

5509

5510 16.2 Page Description Language (PDL) Override

5511 If there is a conflict between the value of an IPP Job Template attribute and a corresponding instruction
5512 in the document data, the value of the IPP attribute SHOULD take precedence over the document
5513 instruction. Consider the case where a previously formatted file of document data is sent to an IPP
5514 Printer. In this case, if the client supplies any attributes at job submission time, the client desires that
5515 those attributes override the embedded instructions. Consider the case were a previously formatted
5516 document has embedded in it commands to load 'iso-a4' media. However, the document is passed to an
5517 end user that only has access to a printer with 'na-letter' media loaded. That end user most likely wants
5518 to submit that document to an IPP Printer with the "media" Job Template attribute set to 'na-letter'. The
5519 job submission attribute should take precedence over the embedded PDL instruction. However, until
5520 companies that supply document data interpreters allow a way for external IPP attributes to take
5521 precedence over embedded job production instructions, a Printer might not be able to support the
5522 semantics that IPP attributes override the embedded instructions.

5523 The IPP model accounts for this situation by introducing a "pdl-override-supported" attribute that
5524 describes the Printer objects capabilities to override instructions embedded in the PDL data stream. The
5525 value of the "pdl-override-supported" attribute is configured by means outside [the scope of this](#)
5526 [IPP/1.1 document](#).

5527 This REQUIRED Printer attribute takes on the following values:

- 5528 - 'attempted': This value indicates that the Printer object attempts to make the IPP attribute values
5529 take precedence over embedded instructions in the document data, however there is no guarantee.
- 5530 - 'not-attempted': This value indicates that the Printer object makes no attempt to make the IPP
5531 attribute values take precedence over embedded instructions in the document data.

5532

5533 At job processing time, an implementation that supports the value of 'attempted' might do one of several
5534 different actions:

- 5535 1) Generate an output device specific command sequence to realize the feature represented by the
5536 IPP attribute value.
- 5537 2) Parse the document data itself and replace the conflicting embedded instruction with a new
5538 embedded instruction that matches the intent of the IPP attribute value.
- 5539 3) Indicate to the Printer that external supplied attributes take precedence over embedded instructions
5540 and then pass the external IPP attribute values to the document data interpreter.
- 5541 4) Anything else that allows for the semantics that IPP attributes override embedded document data
5542 instructions.

5543

5544 Since 'attempted' does not offer any type of guarantee, even though a given Printer object might not do a
5545 very "good" job of attempting to ensure that IPP attributes take a higher precedence over instructions
5546 embedded in the document data, it would still be a conforming implementation.

5547 At job processing time, an implementation that supports the value of 'not-attempted' might do one of the
5548 following actions:

- 5549 1) Simply pre-pend the document data with the PDL instruction that corresponds to the client-
5550 supplied PDL attribute, such that if the document data also has the same PDL instruction, it will
5551 override what the Printer object pre-pended. In other words, this implementation is using the
5552 same implementation semantics for the client-supplied IPP attributes as for the Printer object
5553 defaults.
- 5554 2) Parse the document data and replace the conflicting embedded instruction with a new embedded
5555 instruction that approximates, but does not match, the semantic intent of the IPP attribute value.
5556

5557 Note: The "ipp-attribute-fidelity" attribute applies to the Printer's ability to either accept or reject other
5558 unsupported Job Template attributes. In other words, if "ipp-attribute-fidelity" is set to 'true', a Job is
5559 accepted if and only if the client supplied Job Template attributes and values are supported by the
5560 Printer. Whether these attributes actually affect the processing of the Job when the document data
5561 contains embedded instructions depends on the ability of the Printer to override the instructions
5562 embedded in the document data with the semantics of the IPP attributes. If the document data attributes
5563 can be overridden ("pdl-override-supported" set to 'attempted'), the Printer makes an attempt to use the
5564 IPP attributes when processing the Job. If the document data attributes can not be overridden ("pdl-
5565 override-supported" set to 'not-attempted'), the Printer makes no attempt to override the embedded
5566 document data instructions with the IPP attributes when processing the Job, and hence, the IPP attributes
5567 may fail to affect the Job processing and output when the corresponding instruction is embedded in the
5568 document data.

5569 16.3 Using Job Template Attributes During Document Processing.

5570 The Printer object uses some of the Job object's Job Template attributes during the processing of the
5571 document data associated with that job. These include, but are not limited to, "orientation-requested",
5572 "number-up", "sides", "media", and "copies". The processing of each document in a Job Object MUST
5573 follow the steps below. These steps are intended only to identify when and how attributes are to be used
5574 in processing document data and any alternative steps that accomplishes the same effect can be used to
5575 implement this specification.

- 5576 1. Using the client supplied "document-format" attribute or some form of document format detection
5577 algorithm (if the value of "document-format" is not specific enough), determine whether or not
5578 the document data has already been formatted for printing. If the document data has been
5579 formatted, then go to step 2. Otherwise, the document data MUST be formatted. The formatting
5580 detection algorithm is implementation defined and is not specified by this specification. The
5581 formatting of the document data uses the "orientation-requested" attribute to determine how the
5582 formatted print data should be placed on a print-stream page, see section 4.2.10 for the details.
5583
- 5584 2. The document data is in the form of a print-stream in a known media type. The "page-ranges"
5585 attribute is used to select, as specified in section 4.2.7, a sub-sequence of the pages in the print-
5586 stream that are to be processed and images.
5587

5588 3. The input to this step is a sequence of print-stream pages. This step is controlled by the "number-
5589 up" attribute. If the value of "number-up" is N, then during the processing of the print-stream
5590 pages, each N print-stream pages are positioned, as specified in section 4.2.9, to create a single
5591 impression. If a given document does not have N more print-stream pages, then the completion
5592 of the impression is controlled by the "multiple-document-handling" attribute as described in
5593 section 4.2.4; when the value of this attribute is 'single-document' or 'single-document-new-
5594 sheet', the print-stream pages of document data from subsequent documents is used to complete
5595 the impression.

5596
5597 The size(scaling), position(translation) and rotation of the print-stream pages on the impression is
5598 implementation defined. Note that during this process the print-stream pages may be rendered to
5599 a form suitable for placing on the impression; this rendering is controlled by the values of the
5600 "printer-resolution" and "print-quality" attributes as described in sections 4.2.12 and 4.2.13. In
5601 the case N=1, the impression is nearly the same as the print-stream page; the differences would
5602 only be in the size, position and rotation of the print-stream page and/or any decoration, such as a
5603 frame to the page, that is added by the implementation.

5604
5605 4. The collection of impressions is placed, in sequence, onto sides of the media sheets. This
5606 placement is controlled by the "sides" attribute and the orientation of the print-stream page, as
5607 described in section 4.2.8. The orientation of the print-stream pages affects the orientation of the
5608 impression; for example, if "number-up" equals 2, then, typically, two portrait print-stream pages
5609 become one landscape impression. Note that the placement of impressions onto media sheets is
5610 also controlled by the "multiple-document-handling" attribute as described in section 4.2.4.

5611
5612 5. The "copies" and "multiple-document-handling" attributes are used to determine how many copies
5613 of each media instance are created and in what order. See sections 4.2.5 and 4.2.4 for the details.

5614
5615 6. When the correct number of copies are created, the media instances are finished according to the
5616 values of the "finishings" attribute as described in 4.2.6. Note that sometimes finishing
5617 operations may require manual intervention to perform the finishing operations on the copies,
5618 especially uncollated copies. This specification allows any or all of the processing steps to be
5619 performed automatically or manually at the discretion of the Printer object.

5620 17. APPENDIX E: Generic Directory Schema

5621 This section defines a generic schema for an entry in a directory service. A directory service is a means
5622 by which service users can locate service providers. In IPP environments, this means that IPP Printers
5623 can be registered (either automatically or with the help of an administrator) as entries of type printer in
5624 the directory using an implementation specific mechanism such as entry attributes, entry type fields,
5625 specific branches, etc. IPP clients can search or browse for entries of type printer. Clients use the
5626 directory service to find entries based on naming, organizational contexts, or filtered searches on
5627 attribute values of entries. For example, a client can find all printers in the "Local Department" context.
5628 Authentication and authorization are also often part of a directory service so that an administrator can

5629 place limits on end users so that they are only allowed to find entries to which they have certain access
5630 rights. IPP itself does not require any specific directory service protocol or provider.

5631 Note: Some directory implementations allow for the notion of "aliasing". That is, one directory entry
5632 object can appear as multiple directory entry object with different names for each object. In each case,
5633 each alias refers to the same directory entry object which refers to a single IPP Printer object.

5634 The generic schema is a subset of IPP Printer Job Template and Printer Description attributes (sections
5635 4.2 and 4.4). These attributes are identified as either RECOMMENDED or OPTIONAL for the
5636 directory entry itself. This conformance labeling is NOT the same conformance labeling applied to the
5637 attributes of IPP Printers objects. The conformance labeling in this Appendix is intended to apply to
5638 directory templates and to IPP Printer implementations that subscribe by adding one or more entries to a
5639 directory. RECOMMENDED attributes SHOULD be associated with each directory entry. OPTIONAL
5640 attributes MAY be associated with the directory entry (if known or supported). In addition, all directory
5641 entry attributes SHOULD reflect the current attribute values for the corresponding Printer object.

5642 The names of attributes in directory schema and entries SHOULD be the same as the IPP Printer
5643 attribute names as shown.

5644 In order to bridge between the directory service and the IPP Printer object, one of the RECOMMENDED
5645 directory entry attributes is the Printer object's "printer-uri-supported" attribute. The IPP client queries
5646 the "printer-uri-supported" attribute in the directory entry and then addresses the IPP Printer object using
5647 one of its URIs. The "uri-security-supported" attribute identifies the protocol (if any) used to secure a
5648 channel.

5649 The following attributes define the generic schema for directory entries of type PRINTER:

5650	printer-uri-supported	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.4.1
5651	uri-security-supported	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.4.2
5652	printer-name	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.4.3
5653	printer-location	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.4.4
5654	printer-info	OPTIONAL	Section 4.4.5
5655	printer-more-info	OPTIONAL	Section 4.4.6
5656	printer-make-and-model	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.4.8
5657	charset-supported	OPTIONAL	Section 4.4.15
5658	generated-natural-language-		
5659	supported	OPTIONAL	Section 4.4.17
5660	document-format-supported	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.4.19
5661	color-supported	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.4.23
5662	finishings-supported	OPTIONAL	Section 4.2.6
5663	number-up-supported	OPTIONAL	Section 4.2.7
5664	sides-supported	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.2.8
5665	media-supported	RECOMMENDED	Section 4.2.11
5666	printer-resolution-supported	OPTIONAL	Section 4.2.12
5667	print-quality-supported	OPTIONAL	Section 4.2.13
5668	<u>pages-per-minute</u>	<u>OPTIONAL</u>	<u>Section 4.4.33</u>
5669	<u>pages-per-minute-color</u>	<u>OPTIONAL</u>	<u>Section 4.4.34</u>

5670

5671 18. APPENDIX F: Change History for Differences between the IPP/1.0 and IPP/1.1 "Model and
5672 Semantics" document Specifications

5673 The following IPP/1.0 [IPP-MOD1.0] extensions and clarifications have been incorporated into IPP/1.1:

- 5674 1. Section 3.1.7 - clarified that only the version number parameter will be carried forward into
5675 future major or minor versions of the protocol.
- 5676 2. Section 3.2.1.1 - clarified that the Printer object rejects a Print-Job request if it does not support
5677 the "compression" operation attribute and a client supplies it.
- 5678 3. Sections 3.2.7, 3.2.8, and 3.2.9 - added the OPTIONAL Pause-Printer, Resume-Printer, and
5679 Purge-Jobs operations
- 5680 4. Sections 3.3.5, 3.3.6, and 3.3.7 - added the OPTIONAL Hold-Job, Release-Job, and Restart-Job
5681 operations.
- 5682 5. Section 4.1.9 - added 'image-tiff' and 'application/pdf' values.
- 5683 6. Section 4.2.2 - added the 'indefinite' keyword value to the "job-hold-until" attribute for use with
5684 the create operations and Hold-Job and Restart-Job operations.
- 5685 7. Section 4.2.6 - added more enum values to the "finishings" Job Template attribute.
- 5686 8. Section 4.3.7.1 - added the Partitioning of Job States section.
- 5687 9. Section 4.3.8 - added the 'job-restartable' keyword value to the "job-state-reasons" attribute for
5688 use with the Restart-Job operation.
- 5689 10. Section 4.4.2 - added the 'tls' keyword value to the "uri-security-supported" attribute.
- 5690 11. Section 4.4.11 - added the 'moving-to-paused' keyword value to the "printer-state-reasons"
5691 attribute for use with the Pause-Job operation.
- 5692 12. Section 4.4.11 - replaced the duplicate 'marker-supply-low' keyword with the missing 'toner-
5693 empty' keyword for the "printer-state-reasons" attribute.
- 5694 13. Section 4.4.13 - added the enum values to the "operations-supported" attribute for the new
5695 operations. Clarified that the values of this attribute are encoded as any enum, namely 32-bit
5696 values.
- 5697 14. Sections 4.4.33 and 4.4.34 - added the OPTIONAL "pages-per-minute" and "pages-per-minute-
5698 color" Printer Description attributes.
- 5699 15. Section 8.5 - added the security discussion around the new operator operations.
- 5700 16. Section 17 - added the OPTIONAL "pages-per-minute" and "pages-per-minute-color" Printer
5701 attributes to the Directory schema.

5702 The following changes were made to IPP/1.0 [IPP-MOD1.0] to create this IPP/1.1 document:

- 5703 1. Section 3.1.7, 5.2.4, and 14.1.5.4 - IPP objects MUST support both version 1.0 and 1.1. Clients
5704 MUST support version 1.1 and MAY support version 1.0.
- 5705 2. Section 4.1.9 - deleted 'text/plain; charset=iso-10646-ucs-2', since binary is not legal with the
5706 'text' type.

5707 3. Section 5.4, 8.2, and 8.7 - changed the IPP object security requirements from OPTIONAL non-
 5708 standards track SSL3 to RECOMMENDED standards track TLS. Changed the client security
 5709 requirements from RECOMMENDED non-standards track SSL3 to RECOMMENDED
 5710 standards track TLS

5711 See also the "IPP/1.1 Encoding and Transport" [ipp-pro] document for differences between IPP/1.0 [IPP-
 5712 PRO1.0] and IPP/1.1 [IPP-PRO].

5713 ~~18.2 Changes to the IPP/1.0 November 16, 1998 version to make the IPP/1.0 January 21, 1999 version~~

5714 ~~The following changes to the IPP/1.0 November 16, 1998 version were made to create the IPP/1.0~~
 5715 ~~January 21, 1999 version:~~

5716 ~~1. Section 4.4.11 - replaced the duplicate 'marker-supply-low' keyword with the missing 'toner-empty'~~
 5717 ~~keyword for the "printer-state-reasons" attribute.~~

5718 ~~2. Section 16.3 - replaced "orientation" with "orientation-requested" to agree with the name of the Job~~
 5719 ~~Template attribute in section 4.2.10.~~

5720 ~~18.3 Changes to the IPP/1.0 June 30, 1998 version to make the IPP/1.0 November 16, 1998 version~~

5721 ~~The following substantive changes and major clarifications have been made to this document from the~~
 5722 ~~June 30, 1998 version based on the interoperability testing that took place September 23-25 1998 and~~
 5723 ~~subsequent mailing list and meeting discussions. They are listed in the order of occurrence in the~~
 5724 ~~document. These changes are the ones that might affect implementations. Clarifications that are~~
 5725 ~~unlikely to affect implementations are not listed. The issue numbers refer to the IPP Issues List which is~~
 5726 ~~available in the following directory:~~

5727

5728 ~~<ftp://ftp.pwg.org/pub/pwg/ipp/approved-clarifications/>~~

5729

5730

Section	Description
global	Replaced TLS references with SSL3 references as agreed with our Area Director on 11/12/1998.
global	Removed the indications that some of these IPP documents are informational, since the intent is now to publish all IPP/1.0 documents as informational as agreed with our Area Director on 11/12/1998.
3.1.2, 16.3.3	Clarify that the IPP object SHOULD NOT validate the range of the request id being 1 to 2**31-1, but accepts and returns any value. Clients

{now IPP- IIG}	MUST still keep in the range 1 to 2**31 though. If the request is terminated before the complete "request id" is received, the IPP object rejects the request and returns a response with a "request id" of 0 (Issue 1.36).
3.1.4.1, 14.1.4.14	Clarified that when a client submits a request in a charset that is not supported, the IPP object SHOULD return any 'text' or 'name' attributes in the 'utf-8' charset, if it returns any, since clients and IPP objects MUST support 'utf-8'. (Issue 1.19)
3.1.4.1	Clarified Section 3.1.4.1 Request Operation Attributes that a client MAY use the attribute-level natural language override (text/nameWithLanguage) redundantly in a request. (Issue 1.46)
3.1.4.2	Clarified Section 3.1.4.2 Response Operation Attributes that an IPP object MAY use the attribute-level natural language override (text/nameWithLanguage) redundantly in a response. (Issue 1.46)
3.1.6	Clarified section 3.1.6: If the Printer object supports the "status-message" operation attribute, it NEED NOT return a status message for the following error status codes: 'client-error-bad-request', 'client-error-charset-not-supported', 'server-error-internal-error', 'server-error-operation-not-supported', and 'server-error-version-not-supported'.
3.2.1.1	Clarified that if a client is not supplying any Job Template attributes in a request, the client SHOULD omit Group 2 rather than sending an empty group. However, a Printer object MUST be able to accept an empty group. This makes [IPP-MOD] agree with [IPP-PRO]. (Issue 1.16)
3.2.1.2, 3.2.5.2, 3.2.6.2, 3.3.1.2, 3.3.3.2, 3.3.4.2,	Clarified that if an IPP object is not returning any Unsupported Attributes in a response, the IPP object SHOULD omit Group 2 rather than sending an empty group. However, a client MUST be able to accept an empty group. This makes [IPP-MOD] agree with [IPP-PRO]. (Issue 1.17)
3.2.1.2, 14.1.2.2, 14.1.4.12	Clarified that an IPP object MUST treat an unsupported attribute syntax supplied in a request in the same way as an unsupported value. The IPP object MUST return the attribute, the attribute syntax, and the value in the Unsupported Attributes group. (Issue 1.26)
3.2.5.2, 3.2.6.2, 3.3.4.2, 14.1.2.1, 14.1.2.2,	Clarified for Get-Printer-Attributes, Get-Jobs, and Get-Job-Attributes that an IPP object MUST return 'successful-ok-ignored-or-substituted-attributes' (0x1), rather than 'successful-ok' (0x0), when a client supplies unsupported attributes as values of the 'requested-attributes' operation attribute. (Issue 1.24)

14.1.4.12	Also clarified that the response NEED NOT contain the "requested-attributes" operation attribute with any supplied values (attribute keywords) that were requested by the client but are not supported by the IPP object. (Issue 1.18)
3.2.6.2 4.1.1.2 4.3.24	Deleted the job-level natural language override (NLO) from Section 3.2.6.2 Get Jobs Response so that all operation responses are the same with respect to NLO. (Issue 1.47)
3.3.1	Clarified that an IPP Printer that supports the Create Job operation MUST handle the situation when a client does not supply Send Document or Send URI operations within a one- to four-minute time period. Also clarified that a client MUST send documents in a multi-document job without undue or unbounded delay. (Issue 1.28)
3.3.3	Clarified that the IPP object MUST reject a Cancel Job request if the job is in 'completed', 'canceled', or 'aborted' job states. (Issue 1.12)
4.1.2.3	Added this new sub-section: it specifies that nameWithoutLanguage plus the implicit natural language matches nameWithLanguage, if the values and natural languages are the same. Also added that keyword never matches nameWithLanguage or nameWithoutLanguage. Clarified that if both have countries, that the countries SHOULD match as well. If either do not, then the country field SHOULD be ignored. (Issues 1.33 and 1.34)
4.1.5	Clarified regarding the case-insensitivity of URLs to refer only to the RFCs that define them. (Issue 1.10)
4.1.11	Clarified that 'boolean' is not a full-sized integer. (Issue 1.38)
4.1.15	Clarified that 'resolution' is not three full-sized integers. (Issue 1.20)
4.2.*	Clarified that standard values are keywords or enums, not names. (Issue 1.49).
4.2.4	Added the 'single-document-new-sheet' value to Section 4.2.4 multiple-document handling. (Issue 1.54)
4.4.18, 4.4.19	Clarified that the "document-format-default" and "document-format-supported" Printer Description attributes are REQUIRED to agree with the table. (Issue 1.4)
4.4.21	Changed "queued-job-count" from OPTIONAL to RECOMMENDED . (Issue 1.14)
4.4.28	Clarified that the implementation-supplied value for the "multiple-

	operation-time-out" attribute SHOULD be between 30 and 240 seconds, though the implementation MAY allow the administrator to set values, and MAY allow values outside this range. (Issue 1.28)
5.1, 5.2.5	Clarified Client Conformance that if a client supports an attribute of 'text' attribute syntax, that it MUST support both the textWithoutLanguage and the textWithLanguage forms. Same for 'name' attribute syntax. Same for an IPP object (Issue 1.48)
6.5, 12.8	Added new section to allow Attribute Groups to be registered as extensions for being passed in operation requests and responses. (Issue 1.25)
7.	Updated the table of text and name attributes to agree with Section 4.2.
8.5	Added a new section RECOMMENDING that the Get-Jobs SHOULD return non-IPP jobs whether or not assigning them a job-id and job-uri. Also RECOMMENDED generating, if possible, job-id and job-uri and supporting other IPP operations on foreign jobs as an implementer option. (Issue 1.32)
9.	Updated document references.
14.1.4.14	Clarified 'client-error-charset-not-supported' that 'utf-8' must be used for any 'text' or 'name' attributes returned in the error response (Issue 1.19).
14.1.5.9	Added a new error code 'server-error-job-canceled' (0x0508) to be returned if a job is canceled by another client or aborted by the IPP object while the first client is still sending the document data. (Issue 1.29)
16.3, 16.4	Moved these sections recommending operation processing steps to the new Implementer's Guide (informational). There indicated that all of the error checks are not required, so an IPP object MAY be forgiving and accept non-conforming requests. However, a conforming client MUST supply requests that would pass all of the error checks indicated. (Issue 1.21)
17	Changed directory schema attributes from REQUIRED to RECOMMENDED. Changed some of the OPTIONAL to RECOMMENDED to agree with the SLP template. Changed the "charset-supported" and "natural-language-supported" from REQUIRED to OPTIONAL. Recommended that the names be the same in a directory entry as the IPP attribute names. (Issue 1.53)

5731